



# ENOCH

BELIEVED BY THE APOSTLES

**BANNED  
BY THE CHURCH**

JOSH & TESS TUCKER

# ENOCH

BELIEVED BY THE APOSTLES  
**BANNED BY THE CHURCH**

JOSH & TESS TUCKER

*Enoch: Believed by the Apostles, Banned by the Church (First Edition)*  
Copyright © 2022 Acts Initiative.

All rights reserved. You may use brief quotations from this resource in presentations, articles, videos, and books. Otherwise, no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means - electronic, mechanical, photocopy, recording, scanning, or any other - without the prior permission of the authors. Such requests may be submitted via [www.ActsInitiative.com](http://www.ActsInitiative.com).

Unless otherwise noted, Scripture taken from The Expanded Bible. Copyright © 2011 by Thomas Nelson, Inc. Used by permission. All rights reserved. Scripture quotations marked (EXB) are also taken from The Expanded Bible.

Scripture quotations marked (ESV) are from The ESV® Bible (The Holy Bible, English Standard Version®), copyright © 2001 by Crossway, a publishing ministry of Good News Publishers. Used by permission. All rights reserved.

Scripture quotations marked (MEV) are taken from the Modern English Version. Copyright © 2014 by Military Bible Association. Used by permission. All rights reserved.

All quotations from The Book of Enoch or any other Apocryphal books are taken from the Literal Standard Version (LSV). Copyright © 2018 Covenant Press. Used by permission. All rights reserved.

ISBN 9798370443671

*Independently published*  
*Printed in the United States of America*





## DEDICATION

To those who have hated and despised  
this world of unrighteousness  
and have hated all its works and ways  
in the name of the Lord of Spirits.



## Table of Contents

1 <a href="#">Believed by the Apostles, Banned by the Church (Part 1)</a> .....	1
2 <a href="#">Believed by the Apostles, Banned by the Church (Part 2)</a> .....	16
3 <a href="#">Jesus, Peter, Jude, John... All Quoted the Book of Enoch?! (Part 1)</a> ....	29
4 <a href="#">Jesus, Peter, Jude, John... All Quoted the Book of Enoch?! (Part 2)</a> ....	49
5 <a href="#">This is the Biggest Proof that Enoch is Scripture</a> .....	64
6 <a href="#">The Book of Enoch Proves Jesus is the Son of God</a> .....	78
7 <a href="#">Enoch Prophesied About Jesus More Than the Old Testament</a> .....	86
8 <a href="#">So, What's the Book of Enoch All About?</a> .....	107
9 <a href="#">The True History of the World According to the Ancients</a> .....	125
10 <a href="#">Archaeological Evidence That the Book of Enoch is True</a> .....	150
11 <a href="#">So... Now What?</a> .....	187





This book is available in numerous formats  
including video and audio.

If you would prefer to watch a video or listen to audio,  
you can find the video or audio series  
available completely for free at:

[actsinitiative.com/enoch](http://actsinitiative.com/enoch)



# ONE

## **Believed by the Apostles, Banned by the Church Part 1**

**H**ave you ever noticed that there are certain passages in the Bible that make it seem like we're missing part of the story? There are places in Scripture where the writer assumes that we all know about something... but we have no clue what he's referencing. Why do these passages exist? Why do certain passages seem as though they reference something that we don't have in our Bibles?

The clearest example of this can be found in the New Testament in the Book of Jude.

The Book of Jude largely deals with a warning about false

Christians in the Church. Jude warned his readers about false teachers and false Christians who had begun to infiltrate the Church sometime around 70 AD. He said that they were contaminating the Church – bringing in lawlessness and living in sin, and even more – that their sin was spreading to others. He warned his readers (and us), reminding us that the apostles had foretold that this would happen. Throughout the rest of the New Testament, we can see a warning: the apostles had repeatedly prophesied that an apostasy was coming to the Church, and around 70 AD, Jude wrote to tell us, “It’s happening! Be on guard!”

This warning from the apostles and Jude is something we have written about extensively in our book, *Dead Church*. It is available absolutely free of charge as a book, a video series, and a podcast. You can find it on our website, [www.ActsInitiative.com](http://www.ActsInitiative.com).

However, in the midst of Jude’s warning, he said something very strange. He referenced something that he expected us to already know about – but it’s not something we can find anywhere in our Bibles.

It is this strange passage that we want to examine in this book.

While warning us about the false Christians who had been infiltrating the Church, Jude said, “It was also about these that Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied, saying, ‘Behold, the Lord comes with ten thousands of his holy ones, to execute judgment on all and to convict all the ungodly of all their deeds of ungodliness that they have committed in such an ungodly way, and of all the harsh things that ungodly sinners have spoken against him.’”<sup>1</sup>

In this passage, as Jude warned us about the apostasy happening in the Church, he essentially said, “Look! The apostles weren’t the only ones who warned us about this. Enoch also said this was coming. Enoch prophesied about all these false Christians that are living in our midst!”

Here is why this is very strange: If we search the Old Testament, we can’t find any record of Enoch ever saying this.

For those of you who are not familiar with who Enoch is, Enoch was the seventh generation of mankind – as Jude said, “the seventh from Adam”. In the Old Testament, we have very little information available to us about Enoch.

In fact, we have nothing more than a few short sentences: “When Enoch was 65 years old, he had a son named Methuselah. After

---

<sup>1</sup> Jude 1:14-15 (ESV)

Methuselah was born, Enoch walked with God 300 years more and had other sons and daughters. So, Enoch lived a total of 365 years. Enoch walked with God; one day Enoch could not be found, because God took him.”<sup>1</sup>

That’s it. Nothing more.

Even though it’s such a short description, there are a few clear elements we can draw from the story. Enoch was clearly a God-fearing man. It says twice that he walked with God. Also, in the context of Genesis 5, every other generation that was listed tells us that the person died, but for Enoch, it says that he was not found because God took him. This reminds us of the story of the prophet Elijah, who didn’t die, but was taken up to Heaven in a chariot of fire. We can easily conclude that Enoch must have experienced the same thing.

However, that’s it. That’s all we know about him. Which is what makes Jude’s quote very strange... Jude seemed to have access to information that we don’t have in the Bible. Jude had more than just a vague idea about something that Enoch had said – he had a direct quotation! Where did he get this?

Even more odd than the quote itself is the fact that Jude clearly assumed that we would already know about this quote from Enoch. Jude was making a greater point – he was warning about false Christians – and he used this quote from Enoch to back up his greater argument. His assumption is readily apparent: he assumed we would already know about this quote from Enoch.

This passage, as well as others like it which we will address throughout this book, confused me for many years. I would always get to these two verses in Jude and wonder what he was talking about. One of the very first times I read this passage, I flipped back to the Old Testament to try to find what Jude was quoting. I was met with the few sentences from Genesis 5 which we just read above, and I couldn’t find anything else.

Sometime later, I tried searching for this quote on a Bible search engine. But the search engine only returned the results found in the Book of Jude. That quote doesn’t exist anywhere else in the Bible. Jude was clearly quoting something from outside the Bible.

At this point, I concluded, as most Christians do, that Jude must have been referencing something that has since been lost. Jude lived two thousand years ago, and that’s a really long time. Many ancient

---

<sup>1</sup> Genesis 5:21-24

documents have been lost since then. So, it's reasonable to conclude that Jude could have been referring to some ancient text which has since been lost. This is the conclusion most Christians come to. Most Christians go through the same steps I did – searching the Old Testament and eventually arriving at the conclusion that Jude was referring to some ancient text which has been lost to the ages of time.

There is, however, one small problem with this conclusion: It's wrong.

What most Christians don't realize is that we know exactly what Jude was quoting. He was quoting from an ancient text known as *The Book of Enoch* (or, as it is often called, *1 Enoch*). Furthermore, and perhaps most importantly, we still have the entire text available to us today.

So, what happened? Why do most Christians not know about it? Why did Jude assume we would know about it? Why is it not in the Bible?

To start answering these questions, we need to take a quick history lesson.

## A QUICK HISTORY LESSON

The Book of Enoch was referenced heavily by the early Christians in the first few centuries.<sup>1</sup> In fact, though most Christians don't realize it, the Book of Enoch was referenced heavily throughout the New Testament (we will look at many examples throughout this book). Many early Christian writers wrote about the Book of Enoch, quoted directly from it, and taught from it.

So, why do most Christians not know about it today? And, if it's truly referenced heavily throughout the New Testament, why is it not included in the Bible today?

To make a long story very short (and much less complicated than it actually is), when the Christians decided which books to include in the Bible, they held a series of meetings in which they all cast votes. The books accepted into the New Testament were the ones which had been authored by one of the apostles or someone with direct access to the apostles (like Mark, Luke, James, and Jude). For the

---

<sup>1</sup> Epistle of Barnabas 4:3, 16:5; Origen, *First Principles* 4.1.35; Justin Martyr, *2 Apology* 5; Athenagoras of Athens, *Plea for the Christians* 24; Clement of Alexandria, *Eclogue* 2.1, 53.4; Clement of Alexandria, *Stromata* 5.1; Irenaeus, *Against Heresies* 4,16,2; Tertullian, *On Idolatry* 4.15; Tertullian, *Apparel of Women*, 3; Commodian, *Comm* 3

most part, these books had come to be distinguished as Scripture long before any vote was ever held. The vote was more a formality than anything. This collection of books came to be known as the canon of the New Testament.

However, what many Christians don't realize is that the canon of the Old Testament was not as clear-cut.

For those who are not familiar with the term, when referring to Scripture, the word *canon* simply means *all of the books that are considered to be genuine Scripture and belong in the Bible*. So, the *canon of Scripture* is the list of books which people have agreed are true Scripture.

When it came to the Old Testament, Protestant Christians adopted the canon of Scripture that was used by the Jews. Catholic Christians included a handful of other books, but more or less followed the same structure. Additionally, Protestants have often claimed that they included any and every book that was used as Scripture by the apostles in the New Testament. In other words, according to them, if it is obvious that the apostles treated a text as Scripture, then it is included in the Protestant Old Testament. This, as we will see throughout the rest of this book, is blatantly false.

Why did Christianity decide to follow the canon of Scripture that was used by the Jews for the Old Testament? Well, the reasoning made sense – Christianity is, after all, built on the foundation of the ancient Jewish texts. In fact, in the first century, Christianity was seen as nothing more than a Jewish sect. So, it made sense to use the Jewish canon of Scripture as the basis for our Old Testament.

But though it makes sense on the surface, there is a fundamental problem with this approach.

The problem is that these decisions were made hundreds of years after Jesus. The Protestant canon wasn't established until more than one and a half millennia after Jesus. And they did *not* decide to use the Jewish canon that had been in place at the time of Jesus. No, they decided the Old Testament should be comprised of the books which were considered to be Scripture by the Jews who were alive at the time when the decision was made (in the 1500s). They assumed that the Jews living at the time would know which of their books were Scripture and which ones weren't. They assumed that the people who had rejected Jesus for hundreds of years would still be capable of correctly identifying God's Word. In other words, they decided to allow the people who had rejected Jesus for hundreds of years to pick which books belong in the Old Testament!

This wouldn't be that big of a deal if the Jewish canon of Scripture



were the same thing it had been at the time of Jesus. But it wasn't. Things had drastically changed.

In fact, at the time of Jesus, there was no established canon of Scripture.<sup>1</sup> There was no definition about which books belonged in the Bible and which ones did not. Some sects of Judaism considered certain books to be Scripture which other sects did not. It is well known that the Sadducees only considered the five books of Moses to be Scripture. There was no consensus!<sup>2</sup>

Christianity adopted the canon of Scripture used by the Jews, but this canon was not created until some time after Jesus! This is very important for us to recognize because it means that our modern canon of Scripture is not based on what was considered to be Scripture at the time of Jesus, but it is instead based on a consensus which was adopted well after Jesus by the very men who vehemently opposed him!

In 66 AD, a Jewish revolt took place against the Roman Empire. The Romans attacked Jerusalem, besieging it for years until it finally fell in 70 AD. They destroyed the Temple and drastically changed Judaism from that point on. Those who were once called the Pharisees simply became known as the Rabbis. This is where modern Rabbinical Judaism gets its roots.



Shortly after the fall of Jerusalem, one rabbi in particular became a leader in the Jewish community. His name was Rabbi Akiva. He is still held in extremely high regard in Judaism to this day.

Rabbi Akiva wanted to make sure that Judaism was preserved after the fall of Jerusalem. After the Temple was gone, Judaism was in a very fragile state. Akiva made it his aim to protect Judaism and preserve it. To do this, he decided to

---

<sup>1</sup> See: Marc Zvi Brettler, *How to Read the Bible*, pg. 273-275

<sup>2</sup> There are those among Protestants who argue that this was not the case – but their arguments are highly contested at best, and extremely biased toward supporting their own pre-conceived ideas about the canon of Scripture. In other words, they are trying to force history to match what they believe instead of the other way around. Arguing this point is not the purpose of this book. I believe it is sufficient to say that it is documented by ancient sources (including Hippolytus, Origen, Jerome, and Josephus) that the Jewish canon of Scripture was not solidified at the time of Jesus. Those who argue otherwise have the burden of proof placed on them, and they fail to prove their arguments.

gather together the Jewish texts and create an agreed-upon canon of Scripture. They decided which books to include, and which books not to include. This canon of Scripture was adopted by almost all Jews worldwide and is still used to this day.<sup>1 2</sup>

So, when the Christians decided to adopt the Jewish canon as the Christian Old Testament, they were actually choosing to use the canon of Scripture which had been established by Rabbi Akiva.

Here is the problem: this was approximately one hundred years after Jesus. Rabbi Akiva was a leader among the Jews who had rejected Jesus. After the fall of Jerusalem, Christianity and Judaism began to diverge drastically. Christianity stopped being seen as a sect of Judaism and began to be recognized as its own entity. As already stated, Rabbi Akiva wanted to protect and preserve Judaism, and part of that goal was to protect it and preserve it from the growing spread of Christianity.

Rabbi Akiva, and the other rabbis of his time, absolutely hated Christianity.<sup>3 4</sup> One of their main goals was to discredit Christianity and stop its spread. This was an ideology that weighed heavily in their decision about which books belonged in the canon of Scripture and which ones did not. They did not want to give any credence to Christianity, which in some cases meant removing the Scriptural authority of some of the texts which were widely used among the Christian movement to prove that Jesus was the Messiah. This is very important to keep in mind as we look in depth at the Book of Enoch throughout the rest of this book, because as we will see, there is a very good reason the Book of Enoch was quoted so heavily by the early Church, and a very good reason why Rabbi Akiva felt the need to discredit it.

So, the Jewish canon of Scripture was established roughly one hundred years after Jesus. It was established by the Pharisees (who were then simply known as *the Rabbis*), and it was established at least in part to discredit Christianity. Hundreds of years later, Christians adopted Rabbi Akiva's corrupted canon of Scripture as their own.

As for the Book of Enoch itself, though it had been held in high regard in early Christianity, it began to be questioned more and more after the establishment of Akiva's canon of Scripture. By the later half of the second century, Akiva's influence had spread so broadly

---

<sup>1</sup> See: S. Douglas Woodward, *Rebooting the Bible*, pgs 80-81, 90

<sup>2</sup> Ginzberg, *The Jewish Encyclopedia*, Vol. I, p. 305-306

<sup>3</sup> See: S. Douglas Woodward, *Rebooting the Bible*, pg 92-94

<sup>4</sup> Daniel Gruber, *Rabbi Akiba's Messiah*, Pg. 112

that Tertullian, the famous early Christian writer, wrote a letter in which he argued that the Book of Enoch is indeed Scripture and that it shouldn't be discredited just because the Jews had denied it. Tertullian saw Christians beginning to question the authority of the Book of Enoch because the Jews had rejected the book, and he put forward arguments, urging Christians to not be led astray by the Jewish influence.<sup>1</sup> In addition to Tertullian, the Book of Enoch was also considered to be Scripture by early Christian writers including Justin Martyr, Irenaeus, Origen, Clement of Alexandria, and others.<sup>2</sup>

However, as time passed, Akiva's influence continued to seep its way into Christianity. After just a few centuries, even the Christians stopped regarding the Book of Enoch as Scripture. Eventually, over the course of a few more centuries, it was lost entirely.<sup>3</sup> The Western world had records of the early Christians referring to something called the Book of Enoch, but the book itself could not be found.

It seemed that Rabbi Akiva had, at least partially, won.

However, in the early 1600's, a French scientist named Nicolas-Claude Fabri de Peiresc went down to Ethiopia and discovered that the Ethiopian Orthodox Church had a book in their Bibles called The Book of Enoch.

This came as a surprise to everyone. Scholars all knew that an ancient book had existed which was attributed to Enoch, and they knew that Jude had quoted from it, but everyone assumed that book had long since been lost. Apparently, the folks down in Ethiopia had never gotten the memo to remove it from their Bibles.

Eventually, this Ethiopian Book of Enoch was brought back to England and translated into English. From that point on, it was referred to as the Book of Enoch. But – things are never that easy.

All the scholars, in all their wisdom, began to tell everyone that this book could not have been the real Book of Enoch. They said it was a fraud – that it had been written after the fact, and that the quote from Jude had been included to make it look legitimate.<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup> Many people still found it fascinating, but the scholars, generally speaking, rejected it. In other words, the scholars speculated that perhaps this

---

<sup>1</sup> Tertullian, On the Apparel of Women, Book I, Chapter III

<sup>2</sup> Epistle of Barnabas 4:3, 16:5; Origen, First Principles 4.1.35; Justin Martyr, 2 Apology 5; Athenagoras of Athens, Plea for the Christians 24; Clement of Alexandria, Eclogue 2.1, 53.4; Clement of Alexandria, Stromata 5.1; Irenaeus, Against Heresies 4,16,2; Tertullian, On Idolatry 4.15; Tertullian, Apparel of Women, 3; Commodian, Comm 3

<sup>3</sup> See: R.H. Charles, Pseudepigrapha, Introduction to The Book of Enoch, pg. 163

<sup>4</sup> See: Ludolf, Commentarius in Hist. Aethip., p. 347

<sup>5</sup> [www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Book\\_of\\_Enoch](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Book_of_Enoch)

book was a fraud, so they proceeded to teach their speculation as if it were proven fact.

However, in the late 1940's, some ancient scrolls were found near the Dead Sea in Qumran. These scrolls, now known as The Dead Sea Scrolls, pre-dated Rabbi Akiva. In fact, they pre-dated Jesus. And in the early 1950's, tucked away among the Dead Sea Scrolls, they found many fragments from the Book of Enoch. And it turns out, the Book of Enoch in the Dead Sea Scrolls is the same book that had been found in Ethiopia.<sup>1 2</sup>

So, it turns out that all the scholars were completely wrong when they told everyone that the Book of Enoch from Ethiopia was a fraud! It turns out that the Book of Enoch from Ethiopia is the same book that was quoted by Jude and referenced by the early Church writers. We know that it pre-dates Jesus, and we know that it is the real Book of Enoch.

Of course, those scholars merely altered their argument. Though they are willing to concede that this is the real Book of Enoch that was quoted by Jude and the early Church, they still maintain that the book is a fraud. They now claim that it wasn't really written by Enoch, but that it was written by some Jewish people sometime a few hundred years prior to Jesus.

My aim is to show that this is demonstrably false. However, we should look briefly at what these scholars are currently saying, and why they believe what they believe.

## WHAT ABOUT THE SCHOLARS?

The scholars say that the Book of Enoch was written roughly two hundred years before Jesus. They say this for a few reasons. The first reason has to do with the story of the Maccabees. The second reason has to do with the Babylonian Exile.

First, the scholars claim that the Book of Enoch describes events which occurred during the time-period of the Maccabees. This claim is, in and of itself, debatable at best. However, to the scholars, if the Book of Enoch describes the events of the Maccabees, then the Book of Enoch must have been written after the events of that time-period. This is a reasonable assumption... if you're already assuming the Book of Enoch was not prophetic or inspired by God. Obviously, a

---

<sup>1</sup> See: <http://dss.collections.imj.org.il/significance>

<sup>2</sup> [www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Book\\_of\\_Enoch](http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Book_of_Enoch)

non-prophetic book cannot accurately describe events in detail before they happen. However, if a book is true Scripture, and is inspired by God, then this argument goes out the window.

In addition, as stated above, the idea that the Book of Enoch describes the events of the Maccabees is debatable at best. Personally, I don't agree! The portion of the book in question is telling the story of human history through a parable. It uses a lot of imagery and metaphors. The scholars claim that it is describing the period of the Maccabees, therefore it must have been written sometime after the Maccabees. However, they also say that they know this portion of the parable is talking about the Maccabees because the Book of Enoch was written shortly after the time of the Maccabees.

This is circular reasoning. It is flawed at its very core. They are saying, "We know it is dated at this time period because it talks about this time period, and we know it's talking about this time period because it is dated at this time period."

We can dismiss this entire argument at face value.

The second reason scholars use to date the Book of Enoch at around the second century BC has to do with the Babylonian Exile. According to the scholars, the Book of Enoch was written as a polemic against the Babylonian religion. In other words, they see it as a counterargument to the Babylonian creation story and the Babylonian stories about their gods. Essentially, the Book of Enoch and the Babylonian myths tell the same story from different perspectives (we will see this in more detail in a later chapter). The scholars assume that the Book of Enoch was written as an argument against the Babylonian religion. However, they assume this because they assume that it was written after the Babylonian captivity. But they assume it was written after the Babylonian captivity because they assume it is an argument against the Babylonian religion!

Once again, they are using circular reasoning! Once again, this is not an argument at all! Yet this is what passes for scholarly research in the modern world.

Furthermore, what a lot of Christians don't realize is that these same "Christian" scholars do the same thing with books that are included in the Bible! For example, Christian scholars generally hold that the books of Moses – the Law of Moses – were written sometime

after the Babylonian captivity.<sup>1 2 3</sup> Or, at the very least, they say that it was finished around that time. In addition to this, they say that the Book of Daniel was written sometime around the period of the Maccabees.<sup>4 5</sup> They say this because they recognize that Daniel accurately described events that occurred during the period of the Maccabees. Therefore, to these scholars, it couldn't have been written before the events occurred. They claim that Daniel was not even a real person – that he was a fictional character.

We need to start understanding that this is what the Christian scholars believe! This is what they teach in Seminary! Jesus, the Son of God whom they claim to believe in, taught from the Law of Moses and referred to Daniel as a prophet.<sup>6</sup> If they truly believed in Jesus as the Son of God, they would trust his authority over what they learned in Seminary. They would recognize that Jesus endorsed the Law of Moses and the Book of Daniel, which means those books are trustworthy and were written by whom they claim to be written.

Similarly, if they truly believed in Jesus as the Son of God, they would accept what he and the apostles said about the Book of Enoch, and they would recognize it for what it really is – an inspired book which was truly written by Enoch, the seventh from Adam.

Here is what a lot of Christians don't realize: the scholars are well aware that the Book of Enoch was extremely influential on the New Testament.<sup>7</sup> They openly acknowledge that the apostles and Jesus drew from the Book of Enoch and taught from it as though it is a reliable book. Everything we are going to cover in this book – all the proof that the New Testament writers considered the Book of Enoch to be Scripture – is something that the scholars already recognize, though the average Christian has never even heard of it! The scholars acknowledge that Jesus and the apostles got a lot of theology from the Book of Enoch. Yet they still hold that the Book of Enoch is fraudulent, and they claim it was written by someone else who only pretended to be Enoch.

In other words, these so-called Christian scholars believe that the Holy-Spirit-inspired New Testament is heavily influenced by a

---

<sup>1</sup> See: <https://drmsch.com/law-moses-means/>

<sup>2</sup> <https://drmsch.com/law-moses-survey-scriptural-phrase/>

<sup>3</sup> <https://drmsch.com/law-moses-read-moses-wrote/>

<sup>4</sup> <https://readingacts.com/2020/01/20/when-was-the-book-of-daniel-written>

<sup>5</sup> Walter C. Kaiser JR, Duane Garrett, The NIV Archaeological Study Bible

<sup>6</sup> Matthew 24:15

<sup>7</sup> See Dr. Michael Heiser's books, *The Unseen Realm* and *Reversing Hermon*

fraudulent book claiming to be something that it's not.

Dr. Michael Heiser, one of these scholars, and a leading expert on the Ancient Near-East, said of the Book of Enoch: "Peter knows this literature. And because he's read it, he has a fuller picture of what Genesis 6:1-4 means – how it operates, why it's there, why the first four verses make sense of the fifth verse... Peter understands that, and he uses it in his discussion to avoid false teachers. It makes perfect sense across the board for him to do that."<sup>1</sup>

Dr. Heiser said again: "...there's a lot of other stuff in the book [of Enoch] that bleeds into the New Testament... when you get to the New Testament, it's like, if I had read the Book of Enoch, I would think, 'I've seen this before.' So, it really cuts off at the knees a lot of these notions that New Testament writers are just making stuff up... The book of life, these heavenly books – there's a lot of stuff like that in Enoch. The lake of fire, final judgment, the general apocalyptic stuff that you read in the Book of Revelation – yes, well, Enoch was there first... Peter quotes from Enoch. Jude quotes from Enoch. There's stuff in the gospels that, again, are directly traceable to things in Enoch. It has its fingerprints on the New Testament in a lot of places, even if it's not a direct quotation."<sup>2</sup>

So, there is one example of a highly accredited Christian scholar acknowledging the influence of the Book of Enoch on the New Testament. Yet this same scholar (and others like him) also deny that the Book of Enoch is what it claims to be – written by Enoch. These scholars believe that the New Testament is divinely-inspired Scripture, yet at the same time, they recognize it is built on the foundation of a book which they claim is fraudulent.

This brings up a greater point worth considering, and that is – why should we trust the "scholars"?

Jesus himself (the Son of God) said, "I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because *you have hidden these things from the people who are wise and learned*. But you have revealed them to those who are like little children. Yes, Father, because this is what you really wanted."<sup>3</sup>

Jesus, the highest authority possible, and the most trustworthy source of information imaginable, said that God himself is actively hiding the truth from people who are "wise and learned". So, I ask

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=h5Z04SJENVE>

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KHPaRbV0f1k>

<sup>3</sup> Matthew 11:25-26

again, why should we trust the scholars? If God himself is actively hiding the truth from them, then why would we assume that they are a good source for information?

As already stated, scholars today assume that the Book of Enoch was written sometime within a few hundred years prior to Jesus. In other words – *NOT BY ENOCH*. However, the Book of Enoch claims, in no uncertain terms, that it *IS* written by Enoch himself. Throughout the rest of this book, we will look in depth at how Jesus and the apostles considered the Book of Enoch to be Scripture. And we will look at how the Holy-Spirit-inspired New Testament is clearly built on the foundation of the Book of Enoch.

If Jesus, the apostles, and the Holy Spirit all considered the Book of Enoch to be true and reliable and inspired, then it cannot be fraudulent. It directly claims to be written by Enoch. If that is not true, then it is lying, which means it is not true, reliable, or inspired. Which would mean that Jesus, the apostles, and the Holy Spirit were all wrong.

That is the view held by modern “Christian” scholars.

If the New Testament is truly divinely-inspired, and if it does truly endorse the Book of Enoch, then the Book of Enoch must be what it claims to be – written by Enoch at the command and inspiration of God.

## WHY READ THIS BOOK?

The purpose of this book is to demonstrate to my readers what the scholars already know and widely recognize: that the Book of Enoch was quoted, referenced, and taught from by Jesus and the apostles throughout the whole of the New Testament. The scholars know that this is true, but they still deny the extraordinary implications.

If the New Testament is breathed out by God and inspired by the Holy Spirit, and if the New Testament is built on the foundation of the Book of Enoch, then the Book of Enoch cannot be what the scholars claim it is.

The purpose of this book is to give a comprehensive overview to demonstrate that Jesus, the apostles, and the Holy Spirit endorsed the Book of Enoch as being true, reliable, and inspired. Therefore, the Book of Enoch should be considered as Scripture, it belongs in the Bible, and Christians should begin to read it and learn from it.



This book will be organized into three primary sections:

**First** – we will look at numerous places throughout the New Testament where the apostles and Jesus quoted or referenced the Book of Enoch. These will be passages covering a broad range of topics simply to show how influential this book really was. Note: this will not be an exhaustive list. We will look at a dozen or so examples, but there are many other examples which we will not cover in this book.

**Second** – we will narrow in on a specific topic. We will look at the passages in the Book of Enoch that have to do with Jesus himself. As we do this, we will see that the Book of Enoch explicitly prophesied things about Jesus that were never stated anywhere else in the Old Testament. We will see that the apostles understood certain truths about Jesus because they were informed by the Book of Enoch.

**Third** – we will look at history. If the Book of Enoch is Scripture, then the story it tells is a true story. But, as we will see, the Book of Enoch tells a very strange story. If this strange story is true, then there should be documentable evidence of this story in the historical record. We will look at the stories told by other cultures to see that ancient cultures around the world all told the same story as Enoch. We will also look at the archaeological record to see that there still remains physical evidence today that verifies this strange story given to us by Enoch.

This topic is, understandably, controversial. I am making the claim that there is another book that belongs in the Bible! I understand that this is a massive claim to make, and a huge pill to swallow. All I ask as you read this book is that you hear me out, hear my arguments, and then go investigate it for yourself.

There is a famous quote that says, “condemnation without investigation is the height of ignorance.”

In other words, if you reject an idea without ever even looking into it, you don’t know what you’re talking about, you are uninformed, and you have no grounds to stand on. In this book, I am not asking my readers to blindly accept what I say. I never want that. I am asking my readers to hear all the evidence and think about it for themselves.

We should be people who search for the truth – even if it takes us away from the traditions of men. We need to accept the fact that the

canon of Scripture is nothing more than the tradition of men. There is not a single place in the Bible that tells us which books belong in the Bible and which ones do not. It is a man-made idea – one that we should not hold more tightly than what Scripture directly says.

Jesus said to the Pharisees, “You rejected the word of God for the sake of your own tradition.”<sup>1</sup>

This is the danger we run into when we dogmatically hold to the traditions of men. What greater way can you reject the word of God than by dismissing it as uninspired?

In this book, I am asking you to evaluate the evidence for yourself. Do not assume the traditions of men are correct. Do not assume that my conclusion is correct. Follow the evidence and ask the Spirit to show you the truth.

---

<sup>1</sup> Matthew 15:6

# TWO

## **Believed by the Apostles, Banned by the Church Part 2**

**I**n the last chapter, we saw that Jude, the brother of Jesus, while writing to the early Church around 70 AD, quoted from a book known to us today as the Book of Enoch. This quote is one of those strange verses in the Bible that many Christians wonder about because Jude quoted something that is not found anywhere in our Bibles, yet he quoted it as though he expected us to already know about it.

In this Chapter, we will see that Jude not only quoted the Book of Enoch, but he and Jesus both considered the Book of Enoch to be

inspired by the Holy Spirit.

Before we start, let's look at the quote from Jude one more time, and compare it to what the Book of Enoch says:<sup>1</sup>

**Jude 1:14-15 (ESV)**

“It was also about these that Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied, saying, ‘Behold, the Lord comes with ten thousands of his holy ones, to execute judgment on all and to convict all the ungodly of all their deeds of ungodliness that they have committed in such an ungodly way, and of all the harsh things that ungodly sinners have spoken against him.’”

**1 Enoch 1:9**

“And, behold, He comes with tens of thousands of His holy ones to execute judgment upon all, and to destroy all the ungodly, and to convict all flesh of all the works of their ungodliness which they have ungodly committed, and of all the hard things which ungodly sinners have spoken against Him.”

When we look at these two quotes side by side, it is very apparent that Jude was directly quoting the Book of Enoch. The translations may be a little bit different, but it is essentially the same thing.

Once again, this is something that the scholars recognize. They know Jude quoted from the Book of Enoch! For most of us Christians, when we read this passage in Jude, we have no idea what he's talking about. We assume he knew about some ancient text that we don't have available to us anymore. Yet, there it is! This exact quote is right there, in the Book of Enoch.

As already explained in the first chapter, we know that the Book of Enoch pre-dates Jesus. It pre-dates Jesus, and it pre-dates Jude. This means that the Book of Enoch was not quoting Jude; Jude was clearly quoting the Book of Enoch – because the Book of Enoch was written first. This is undeniably the book Jude quoted. No one argues with that.

So... what does this mean?

We can clearly see that Jude referenced the Book of Enoch. Not only that, but he clearly attributed this quote to Enoch himself. Jude even used this quote to prove his point in his letter! Does this mean that the Book of Enoch should be considered Scripture?

There are a number of people out there who already know about

---

<sup>1</sup> Throughout this book, when quoting the Book of Enoch, we will refer to it as 1 Enoch. This is the traditional name given to it because there are two other books in existence which are also given the name *Enoch* but are known to be Gnostic and Rabbinical texts. The names *1 Enoch* and *The Book of Enoch* are used interchangeably by most scholars, and we will do the same throughout this book.

the Book of Enoch. They read it, they study it, they value it, and they teach from it. Many of them argue that it should be considered Scripture because Jude quoted it.

Let me say unequivocally – I agree with their conclusion. After having searched the Scriptures, I have concluded that the Book of Enoch belongs in Scripture. That’s what this book you’re reading aims to prove. I want to show you why I have come to this conclusion. I want to encourage you to think about it and investigate it for yourself.

However, though I agree with their conclusion, I think this argument, by itself, is very weak. Is it really enough to say, “Jude quoted it, therefore it’s Scripture”? I think not.

Paul quoted pagan Greek poets on multiple occasions.<sup>1</sup> He quoted those poets in order to make or prove a point. Does that mean that Greek poetry should be considered Scripture? No.

Paul quoted pagan Greek poetry to make a point in much the same way that someone today might quote a movie or a famous politician to make a point. It doesn’t mean that we think that movie is inspired Scripture just because we quoted it.

In the same way, perhaps Jude merely quoted the Book of Enoch because his audience was familiar with it. Maybe he was just making a point. Couldn’t that be the only reason he quoted it? Does the fact that he quoted it really mean it’s Scripture?

If Jude had merely quoted the Book of Enoch, then no – it wouldn’t really prove anything. But that’s not what he did. He did more than just quote it. What I find very strange is that those who consider Enoch to be Scripture are not arguing what they should all be arguing. It doesn’t matter that Jude merely quoted the Book of Enoch. The important point is not *that he quoted it*. What is really important is *what he said about it*.

Look at what Jude said again. There is one little word there that sheds a ton of light on how Jude viewed this book.

He wrote, “It was also about these, that Enoch, the seventh from Adam, **prophesied...**”

When Jude quoted the Book of Enoch, he did not say, “Enoch said...” No, he said, “Enoch prophesied...”

Jude, writing with the authority of an apostle, under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit, told us in plain words that the Book of Enoch is prophecy.

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 17:28; 1 Corinthians 15:33; Titus 1:12

That is a huge statement! With a single word, Jude did more than just quote a book – he endorsed it as prophecy. He showed us what it is. Perhaps the Spirit knew that the Book of Enoch would come under attack just a few decades later? Perhaps He inspired Jude to choose that word to set the record straight for thousands of years to come?

Whatever the case, the fact is – Jude recorded that the Book of Enoch is prophecy. And he did so under the inspiration of the Holy Spirit. After all, the book of Jude is certainly Scripture, is it not?

This means that, through Jude, the Holy Spirit has endorsed the Book of Enoch as prophecy.

So – what is prophecy? Let’s use Scripture to define our terms.

Peter wrote, “No prophecy ever came from what a person wanted to say, but people led by the Holy Spirit spoke words from God.”<sup>1</sup>

What then is prophecy? According to Peter, prophecy is when people speak words from God as they are led by the Holy Spirit.

Jude just told us that this is what the Book of Enoch is! According to Jude (and thereby according to the Holy Spirit), the Book of Enoch is made up of words from God, written down as Enoch was led by the Holy Spirit!

So then, is this enough for us to consider the Book of Enoch as Scripture? What is Scripture? Let’s continue to use Scripture itself to define our terms.

Our definition of Scripture comes primarily from one passage in the New Testament. When writing to Timothy, Paul said, “All Scripture is breathed out by God and is useful for teaching, for rebuking, for correcting faults, and for training in righteousness so that God’s person will be competent, fully equipped to do every good work.”<sup>2</sup>

In other words, according to Paul (and the Holy Spirit who inspired Paul), Scripture is that which is breathed out by God. When Christians introduced the canon of the Bible, this verse was a driving force – they said that the Bible would be composed of those books which were breathed out by God. And they said that they only removed the books which were not truly breathed out by God. So, essentially, this verse is where we get our definition of Scripture. Scripture is that which was breathed out by God.

However, as we already saw, according to Peter, prophecy is also

---

<sup>1</sup> 2 Peter 1:21

<sup>2</sup> 2 Timothy 3:16-17

that which is breathed out by God. Prophecy is when people are led by the Spirit and speak words from God. That is essentially the same thing as saying it is “breathed out by God.”

And Jude, in Scripture, speaking words that were breathed out by God, told us that the Book of Enoch is prophecy. This means that the Book of Enoch is breathed out by God – which means that it is Scripture, which means that it should be included in the Bible.

We were told by Christian leaders and scholars that all true Scripture is included in the Bible, and that nothing was removed which was truly Scripture. But according to Jude, they were wrong - because Enoch, the seventh from Adam, *prophesied* when he wrote the Book of Enoch. And the apostles defined *prophecy* the same way they defined *Scripture*. Therefore, the Book of Enoch is Scripture.

So, we can see that the New Testament referred to the Book of Enoch as true words which were breathed out by God. And we know that the New Testament is itself Scripture – it itself is breathed out by God, given to us by the leading of the Holy Spirit. Therefore, God Himself, through the Holy Spirit, has endorsed the Book of Enoch as Scripture. There really is no other way we can look at it.

This is a very compelling piece of evidence. Yet it is not even the only place where the New Testament referred directly to the Book of Enoch and called it Scripture...

## JESUS CALLED ENOCH SCRIPTURE

Throughout the stories in the gospel accounts, all the religious leaders were angry at Jesus and wanted to trick him into saying something they could use against him. Various people kept attacking him with questions, trying to trap him with one argument or another. In Matthew 22, the Sadducees approached him with the same intention.

There are a few important things for us to recognize about the Sadducees:

First – they did not believe in the resurrection of the dead. In other words, they believed that when a person dies, that person is dead forever, and there is no coming resurrection where we will all rise from the dead.

Second – the Sadducees only considered the first five books of the Old Testament as Scripture – Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus,

Numbers, and Deuteronomy.<sup>1 2 3</sup> They didn't consider anything else to be Scripture – the Prophets (Isaiah, Jeremiah, etc...), Psalms, Proverbs, the Histories (Chronicles, Kings, etc...), or the Book of Enoch. So, to put it in modern terms, their biblical canon only consisted of Genesis through Deuteronomy, and that is all they read. This is very important. Here's what happened:

“That same day some Sadducees came to Jesus and asked him a question. (Sadducees believed that people would not rise from the dead.) They said, “Teacher, Moses said if a married man dies without having children, his brother must marry the widow and raise up offspring for him. Once there were seven brothers among us. The first one married and died. Since he had no children, his brother married the widow. Then the second brother also died. The same thing happened to the third brother and all the other brothers down to the seventh. Finally, the woman died. Since all seven men had married her, at the resurrection, whose wife will she be?”

“Jesus answered, ‘You are deceived, because you don't know what the Scriptures say, and you don't know about the power of God. Because, at the resurrection, they will not marry, nor will they be given to someone to marry. They will be like the angels in heaven.’”<sup>4</sup>

At first glance, few people recognize the significance of what Jesus said in this passage. Many Christians read this passage and just get confused. They wonder what Jesus was talking about. Why would he say there is no marriage in the resurrection? I've heard many sermons on the topic as Christians have speculated and made up their own ideas about what they think Jesus was saying. Worse – they then teach those speculations as if it is definite biblical fact. But really, they don't have a clue what they're talking about.

The problem is – Christians today are just like the Sadducees. According to Jesus, the Sadducees were deceived because they did not know the Scriptures. Why did the Sadducees not know the Scriptures? They didn't know the Scriptures because they only regarded Genesis through Deuteronomy as Scripture. They didn't read anything else, therefore they didn't know anything outside of those books. According to Jesus, this is the reason they didn't know what they were talking about when they asked this question. If they had known and read all of Scripture, they would have already known

---

<sup>1</sup> Hippolytus, *The Refutation of All Heresies*, Book 9, Ch 24

<sup>2</sup> Origen, *Against Celsus*, Ch 49

<sup>3</sup> Jerome, *Catena Aurea*, *The Gospel of Matthew*, Ch 22

<sup>4</sup> *Matthew 22:23-30*



what Jesus said about marriage in the resurrection.

This is precisely why Christians today are just like the Sadducees. Just like the Sadducees, Christians today don't understand what Jesus said about marriage in the resurrection. It seems like a weird verse that stands alone without any other context. It seems like something Jesus taught that cannot be found anywhere else in the Bible.

But Jesus just said it comes from Scripture. He told the Sadducees that they were wrong because they did not know the Scriptures, and then he immediately explained the concept that they would have understood if they *had* known the Scriptures.

So, why do Christians not understand it? Why do Christians think that what Jesus said in these verses is the only place this topic is taught in Scripture? Jesus just said it is in Scripture – as in, prior to when he said this, it was already written in Scripture. Yet Christians cannot find it taught anywhere else in their Bibles. Why?

Because, just like the Sadducees, they do not know the Scriptures. Just like the Sadducees, they only consider certain books to be Scripture, but not other books.

When Jesus corrected the Sadducees, he made it clear that their problem stemmed from the fact that they did not consider all of Scripture to be Scripture. But he did not then teach from Psalms, Proverbs, the Histories, or the Prophets. No – he immediately referenced the Book of Enoch.

Christians don't understand what Jesus explained here because, just like the Sadducees, they do not consider the Book of Enoch to be Scripture. Just like the Sadducees, they are wrong because they do not know the Scriptures.

Jesus said that the reason the Sadducees did not understand this concept about marriage in the resurrection was because they did not know the Scriptures, and then he immediately referenced the Book of Enoch to explain the concept. What does this mean?

The obvious implication is that Jesus himself – the Son of God – referred to the Book of Enoch as Scripture. Jesus is the absolute highest authority we could possibly imagine, and he directly called the Book of Enoch Scripture.

So, what was he referencing in the Book of Enoch?

To understand what Jesus said, we need to pause for a moment to give a quick overview of what the Book of Enoch is all about. This way, we will understand the context of the verses that Jesus was referencing.

## THE WORLD BEFORE THE FLOOD

The Book of Enoch predominantly tells us about what was happening in the world prior to the flood. It is the full story of what is summed up in just a few verses in the Book of Genesis. Those few verses in Genesis say:

“The number of people on earth began to multiply, and daughters were born to them. When the sons of God saw that the daughters of men were beautiful, they married any of them they chose. The Lord said, ‘My Spirit will not remain in human beings forever, because they are flesh. Their days will be only 120 years.’ The Nephilim were on the earth in those days and also later. That was when the sons of God came in to the daughters of man. These women gave birth to children who became famous and were the mighty warriors of long ago.”<sup>1</sup>

So, in Genesis 6:1-4, we get this very strange story. It talks about the sons of God coming to the daughters of men, marrying them, and having children who were famous mighty warriors of long ago. And it called them *Nephilim*. What or who are the Nephilim? It’s not very clear in this verse, but there are a few other places in the Old Testament that refer to the Nephilim as being giants.<sup>2</sup>

But this is basically it. Everything that was happening prior to the flood is summed up in these four very weird and confusing verses. It is a very strange passage with almost no explanation found anywhere else in our traditional Bibles.

This is where the Book of Enoch comes in. The Book of Enoch provides us with the details of this story. Moses did not tell us the full story in Genesis because that story was already written down in detail in the Book of Enoch. There was no reason for him to explain it all a second time.

Yet today, Christians (who don’t read the Book of Enoch) have dreamt up all their own ideas about this story. They have, once again, speculated about what this story is, and then they have taught their own speculation as if it is biblical fact. They taught their ideas to people who then taught others, who then taught others, who then taught others. As that idea got passed down from generation to generation, people soon thought that it was what actually happened. But it all started as mere speculation in the first place!

The reality is this: The Book of Enoch tells us exactly what this

---

<sup>1</sup> Genesis 6:1-4

<sup>2</sup> Numbers 13:33

story is all about. The problem is that we don't read the Book of Enoch, so we don't know the story. If we just read the Book of Enoch, there would be no need for speculation.

So, what is the story?

We will look at this in more detail in a later chapter. But, for a brief summary, The Book of Enoch tells a story about angels from Heaven who are called *Watchers*. The Watchers saw that the daughters of men – human women – were beautiful. So, they agreed with one another to descend to earth and choose wives for themselves and have children.<sup>1</sup> When they did this, the children who were born were giants.<sup>2</sup>

In addition to this, the Watchers began to teach their wives and their children all sorts of secrets from Heaven.<sup>3</sup> Those secrets have since corrupted humanity throughout history, all the way up to present day. It included things like making weapons, metallurgy, cosmetics, science, magic, and other various things.

As mankind and the giants learned these skills, they began to consume all the resources available on earth. Eventually, when those resources were depleted, the giants turned on mankind and began to devour mankind as well as the animals.<sup>4</sup>

This continued for many years – in fact, it appears that this continued for many centuries. Eventually, the angels in Heaven who had not fallen (specifically Michael, Uriel, Raphael, and Gabriel) went to God's throne and asked him what he wanted them to do about this.<sup>5</sup>

God instructed these four angels to lock up the Watchers who had fallen, and to punish them in various ways.<sup>6</sup> The Watchers then contacted Enoch and asked him to bring a petition to God on their behalf in which they asked for mercy.<sup>7</sup> When Enoch brought their petition to God, God told Enoch what to tell the Watchers.

This brings us to the part of the story that Jesus referenced when he spoke with the Sadducees, and now we understand some of the background. The entire story of the book of Enoch revolves around these angels – the Watchers – who had left heaven, married women,

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 6

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 7:2

<sup>3</sup> 1 Enoch 7-8

<sup>4</sup> 1 Enoch 7:3-6

<sup>5</sup> 1 Enoch 9

<sup>6</sup> 1 Enoch 10

<sup>7</sup> 1 Enoch 13:3-6

and had children.

## MARRIAGE IN THE RESURRECTION

When the Sadducees tried to trap Jesus, they brought him a puzzle: If someone is married multiple times in this life, who will they be married to in the resurrection?

Once again, here is Jesus' response:

“You are deceived, because you don't know what the Scriptures say, and you don't know about the power of God. Because, at the resurrection, they will not marry, nor will they be given to someone to marry. They will be like the angels in heaven.”<sup>1</sup>

Jesus responded to the Sadducees by telling them that if they had known the Scriptures, they would have known that there is no marriage in the resurrection – that people would be like the angels in heaven. What was he referring to? Where in the Scriptures could they have learned this? The answer to this question is only found in the Book of Enoch.

When Enoch brought the Watchers' petition to God, here is how God responded:

“And He answered and said to me, and I heard His voice: ‘Fear not, Enoch, you righteous man and scribe of righteousness; approach here and hear my voice. And go, say to the Watchers of heaven, who have sent you to intercede for them: “You should intercede for men, and not men for you. Why have you left the high, holy, and eternal heaven, and lain with women, and defiled yourselves with the daughters of men and taken to yourselves wives, and done like the children of earth, and begotten giants as your sons?

““And though you were holy, spiritual, living the eternal life, you have defiled yourselves with the blood of women, and have begotten children with the blood of flesh, and, as the children of men, you have lusted after flesh and blood as those also do who die and perish. Therefore I have given them wives also that they might impregnate them, and beget children by them, that nothing might be wanting to them on earth. But you were formerly spiritual, living the eternal life, and immortal for all generations of the world. And therefore I have not appointed wives for you; for as for the spiritual ones of the heaven, in heaven is their dwelling.””<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Matthew 22:29-30

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 15:1-7

At first glance, this passage might be a little confusing, so let's break it down quickly.

God started off by simply asking the Watchers why they did what they did. He then reminded them that they were holy, spiritual, and living an eternal life – yet they chose to marry and have children anyway. Why was this inappropriate for them to do? God explained: The children of men, who are born of flesh, die and perish. Therefore, because they die, God gave mankind marriage. He gave them wives so that they can have children, so that there is “nothing wanting to them on earth.”

In other words, marriage and children are for people who die. If God hadn't given marriage and children to mankind, then humanity would have ceased to exist when Adam and Eve died. The purpose of marriage and having children is to carry on the name of those who die. It is to keep a dying race from going extinct.

However, God did not give marriage and children to the angels – to the Watchers. Why? Because, as he said, “you were formerly spiritual, living the eternal life, and immortal for all generations of the world. And therefore I have not appointed wives for you...”<sup>1</sup>

This is why it was wrong for the Watchers to marry and have children. They were already living the eternal life. They didn't need marriage because they were not creatures who died. Marriage is only appointed for those who die.

So, when the Sadducees came to Jesus and asked him about marriage in the resurrection, Jesus told them that if they had known the Scriptures, they would have known that there would be no marriage in the resurrection. Why? As Jesus himself said, “they will be like the angels in heaven.”<sup>2</sup>

In other words, in the resurrection, people will no longer die. Just like the angels in heaven, people will be living the eternal life. Therefore, there will no longer be any need for marriage or children. God gave marriage to those who die, and in the resurrection, we will no longer die. Therefore, there will be no need for marriage.

Jesus told the Sadducees that if they had known the Scriptures, they would have already understood this. But this concept is only taught in the Book of Enoch! The Sadducees didn't understand this because they didn't know the Scriptures – they only considered Genesis through Deuteronomy to be Scripture. They didn't know

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 15:6

<sup>2</sup> Matthew 22:30

anything outside of those books.

Today, most Christians don't understand this concept either because they also don't know the Scriptures! They do not consider the Book of Enoch to be Scripture, and the Book of Enoch is the only place this concept was taught. It was not taught, explained, or even alluded to anywhere else in what we call the Old Testament.

Jesus could only have been referencing the Book of Enoch! And he said, "you are deceived because you do not know the Scriptures." Guess what that means!

This means that, according to Jesus – the Son of God himself – the Book of Enoch is not only prophecy (as Jude said), but it is in fact Scripture. Jesus is, without a doubt, the highest authority. Even if someone were daring enough to question whether Jude knew what he was talking about, no Christian can question what Jesus himself said. Jesus is the final authority. If he said the Book of Enoch is Scripture, then we can know without a doubt that the Book of Enoch is undeniably Scripture.

Jesus and Jude both not only referenced the Book of Enoch, but they both told us how we should think about the Book of Enoch. Jude told us we should understand that the Book of Enoch is prophecy. Jesus told us that we should know that the Book of Enoch is Scripture.

This should end the debate.

For nearly two thousand years, men have been telling us that the Book of Enoch is not Scripture. The scholars and Christian leaders argue that the canon of Scripture is reliable and authoritative. They tell us the canon of Scripture was agreed upon by people who were filled with the Holy Spirit. This is supposed to make us trust it.

But we don't know who those people were. Or, at the very least, we don't know if they really had the Holy Spirit or not. Jesus and the apostles warned us that an apostasy was coming to the Church. And Jude wrote his letter to tell us that the apostasy had already arrived in 70 AD. Therefore, this apostasy had been in full swing for hundreds of years before the canon of Scripture was ever developed. So, why would we assume those men were truly filled with the Holy Spirit?

We cannot know with any certainty that the people who chose the canon of Scripture were truly led by the Holy Spirit. But we can know with complete certainty that Jude and Jesus were. Jude was the brother of Jesus, and he was counted as an apostle in the early Church. We can know without a doubt that Jude was led by the Holy Spirit. We can say with certainty that Jude is a reliable source for

information. And Jesus is himself the Son of God! He is the highest authority. If we are uncertain of anything, we should default to what Jesus said. We not only know that Jesus had the Holy Spirit, but he is the one who gives the Holy Spirit to others!

If the people who gave us the canon of Scripture were truly led by the Holy Spirit, then their decision would have lined up with what Jude and Jesus said. Yet, both Jude and Jesus contradict those people. So, who should we trust more?

The canon of Scripture, as given to us by men, is nothing more than a tradition of men. Men voted. Men decided. And we are supposed to blindly trust that those men were led by the Holy Spirit. But we know for a fact that Jude and Jesus were truly led by the Spirit - and they told us the opposite of what those other men have said.

Therefore, the canon of Scripture could not have been agreed upon by the leading of the Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit would not have contradicted what he had already said through Jesus and Jude.

Furthermore, as we will see in the following chapters, the Book of Enoch was held as an authority by all the writers of the New Testament. They quoted it, they taught from it, they referenced it, and they considered it to be an accurate and authoritative book which has been given to us by God.

Those same scholars who tell us to trust the canon of Scripture all openly acknowledge that the New Testament draws heavily from the Book of Enoch. They recognize and acknowledge that divine Scripture endorses the Book of Enoch as a reliable and trustworthy source. Yet they continue telling us to reject it as uninspired. What they say makes no sense.

It is time for us to stop following them, and to investigate these things for ourselves. It is time for us to turn to a higher authority than the traditions of men. Jude said the Book of Enoch is prophecy. Jesus said it is Scripture. This alone should be enough. But there is much more evidence. Throughout the next few chapters, we will begin to see how often the apostles, filled with the Holy Spirit, used the Book of Enoch as they taught the early Church.

# THREE

**Jesus, Peter, Jude, John...**

**All Quoted the Book of**

**Enoch?! Part 1**

**G**rowing up in the Protestant church, I was taught my whole life that the canon of Scripture was decided based at least partially on which books were quoted by the apostles. We were told that every book which was quoted or referenced by the apostles was included in the Old Testament, and that there are no books they quoted or referenced which were left out of the Old Testament. This was very reassuring. According to what I was told, if the apostles considered a book to be Scripture, then it is in the Bible; and if there is no evidence that they considered it to be Scripture, then it was not included in the



Bible. That seemed very reasonable.

But it was a lie.

We have already seen that Jude directly quoted the Book of Enoch and called it prophecy. And we have seen that Jesus himself referenced the Book of Enoch and called it Scripture. Right there we have proof that what we were taught is wrong.

But it goes much further than this. These two proofs, by themselves, should be more than enough to prove that the Book of Enoch is divinely inspired Scripture which belongs in the Bible. However, there is a lot more evidence available which demands the same conclusion.

Contrary to what I was always taught, the apostles did quote books that are not included in the Old Testament. Contrary to what I was taught, there is a lot of evidence that they considered the Book of Enoch to be Scripture.

On the surface, it seems almost absurd to claim that the Book of Enoch is referenced heavily throughout the New Testament. The first time I ever heard that claim, I was skeptical. If the Book of Enoch is really quoted and referenced so much, then why have we never heard of it? Why isn't this something that everyone knows?

The answer to this question is very simple. It is the same thing Jesus said to the Sadducees about the Book of Enoch: "You are deceived, because you don't know what the Scriptures say."<sup>1</sup> In other words, we don't know that the Book of Enoch is referenced countless times throughout the New Testament simply because we don't know what the Book of Enoch says! How would we recognize that it is repeatedly quoted and referenced if we've never read it before?

In addition to this, as I have already mentioned, there are scholars who do read the Book of Enoch. They are familiar with what it says, and they are all in agreement. They agree that the Book of Enoch was quoted and referenced many times by the apostles and Jesus in the New Testament.<sup>2</sup>

This book aims to show you what those scholars already know. I aim to show you that what we were taught about the canon of Scripture is wrong. They didn't include every book the apostles endorsed! They left some out!

---

<sup>1</sup> Matthew 22:29

<sup>2</sup> See: <https://drms.com/the-new-testament-writers-had-the-apocrypha-and-pseudepigrapha-in-their-heads/>

In these next few chapters, we are going to go through the Book of Enoch in chronological order to highlight numerous examples where the Book of Enoch is quoted, referenced, or in some other way endorsed by Jesus and the apostles in the New Testament. Keep in mind as we do this that the Book of Enoch is easily proven to be older than the New Testament. It was found in the Dead Sea Scrolls. This means that if the New Testament says the same thing the Book of Enoch says, then it was the apostles who drew from the Book of Enoch – not the other way around.

If the apostles did draw their information from the Book of Enoch, then they did precisely what we were told they did not do – they quoted and taught from a book which was excluded from the Old Testament.

The verses we are going to look at are far from exhaustive – there are many other places in the New Testament that refer to the Book of Enoch. But we will show enough here to clearly demonstrate that the apostles (and therefore also the Holy Spirit who inspired the New Testament) considered this book to be Scripture.

Throughout the next few chapters, it is the cumulative evidence to pay attention to. Many of these references could be argued against individually. But as you begin to see how often it appears that they taught from the Book of Enoch, you will begin to recognize that the only plausible explanation was that they truly did teach from this book.

## ENOCH: WRITTEN FOR THE FUTURE

To begin, we will look at the very first few verses of the Book of Enoch:

“The words of the blessing of Enoch, with which he blessed the elect and righteous who will be living in the day of tribulation, when all the wicked and godless are to be removed. And he took up his parable and spoke - Enoch, a righteous man, whose eyes were opened by God, saw the vision of the Holy One in the heavens, which the angels showed me, and from them I heard everything, and from them I understood as I saw, but not for this generation, but for a remote one which is to come.”<sup>1</sup>

These are the very first opening words of the Book of Enoch. In

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 1:1-2

these verses, it tells us that these are the actual words of Enoch. In other words, the scholars who claim that this was not written by Enoch are directly contradicting this passage. If this book was not written by Enoch, then this book is a lie, because it clearly states that it was written by Enoch. If this book is a lie, then it is not Scripture, it is not prophecy, and Jude and Jesus were wrong. Those are some big implications if the scholars are right. Furthermore, it would mean that Jude was wrong when Jude directly quoted this book and attributed it to Enoch himself.

In addition to this, we can see something in this passage that is very easy to miss:

Enoch said he saw a vision of God, and in this vision, he heard everything that he wrote down. Furthermore, in this vision, the angels showed him, and he understood, that what he wrote was not for his own generation, but rather for a remote generation which was to come.

In other words, Enoch was shown that what he wrote was for a future generation. Now, we will see later in this book that Enoch wrote extensively about Jesus, about who he is, his death, his resurrection, and his subsequent glory. However, for now we should simply note that before he wrote any of those things down, he explicitly said that he was told by the angels that these things were written for a future generation.

Why is that worth noting?

Because Peter wrote about the prophets who had prophesied in the ancient past (which would have included Enoch).

Peter said, “This salvation was something even the prophets wanted to know more about when they prophesied about this gracious salvation prepared for you. They wondered what time or situation the Spirit of Christ within them was talking about when he told them in advance about Christ’s suffering and his great glory afterward. They were told that their messages were not for themselves, but for you.”<sup>1</sup>

According to Peter, the prophets prophesied about Jesus, and they wondered when those prophesies would be fulfilled. They were shown that they were not prophesying about their own time, but rather about a later time.

What was Peter talking about? When did this occur in the Old Testament? If you only read the Scriptures we have in the Bible, you

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Peter 1:10-12 (NIV)

would have to wonder where Peter got this from. That story is not told in our Old Testament. So, either Peter just somehow knew it... or he read the Book of Enoch, which informed him that Enoch had been told that his prophecy was for a future generation – not his own generation.

Considering that the Book of Enoch was well known at Peter's time, and the fact that his fellow-apostle Jude knew it well enough to quote it, it's not a stretch to assume that this is the story Peter referenced.

But there's another reason to think that Peter may have been referencing the Book of Enoch: Peter himself taught from the Book of Enoch extensively!

## WHEN ANGELS SINNED...

To understand how Peter (and, once again, Jude) taught from the Book of Enoch, we must first understand more of the story told by Enoch.

In the last chapter, we already covered the basic premise of the story. The angels, called Watchers, descended from heaven, married women, had children with those women, and those children were giants. After this occurred, God ordered the good angels who had not fallen to lock up the Watchers to await their coming judgment.

This is the part of the story we want to look at next, because Peter and Jude both taught directly from this story.

To begin, we will look at the judgment God decreed over Azazel. For the record, Azazel was one of the leaders of the Watchers who fell. He receives special attention in numerous places throughout the Book of Enoch, which seems to indicate that he was a very big player in this story. When God first began issuing judgment against the Watchers, he started with Azazel:

“Again, the Lord said to Raphael: ‘Bind Azazel hand and foot and cast him into the darkness; and make an opening in the desert, which is in Dudael, and cast him therein. And place upon him rough and jagged rocks, and cover him with darkness, and let him abide there forever, and cover his face that he may not see light. And on the day of the great judgment he will be cast into the fire.’”<sup>1</sup>

Next, God issued a judgment against Semjaza and the rest of the

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 10:4-6

Watchers. Semjaza was the leader of the Watchers, and he instigated the plan to descend from heaven and marry women. God said:

“And the Lord said unto Michael: ‘Go, bind Semjaza and his associates who have united themselves with women so as to have defiled themselves with them in all their uncleanness. And when their sons have slain one another, and they have seen the destruction of their beloved ones, bind them fast for seventy generations in the valleys of the earth, until the day of their judgment and of their consummation, until the judgment that is for ever and ever is consummated. In those days they will be led off to the abyss of fire, and to the torment and the prison in which they will be confined forever. And whosoever will be condemned and destroyed will from then on be bound together with them to the end of all generations.’”<sup>1</sup>

Finally, let’s look at one more passage from chapter twelve. In 1 Enoch 12, God told Enoch to deliver a message to the Watchers. He said:

“Enoch, you scribe of righteousness, go, declare to the Watchers of the heaven who have left the high heaven, the holy eternal place, and have defiled themselves with women, and have done as the children of earth do, and have taken unto themselves wives: ‘You have wrought great destruction on the earth; and you will have no peace nor forgiveness of sin.’”<sup>2</sup>

These three passages provide a good summary of the judgment passed on the Watchers for what they did. These passages have a lot of very interesting information that we could (and will) talk about. But for the purpose of this chapter, we want to look at some of the ways it describes the punishment of the Watchers:

First, it said that Azazel was bound hand and foot, and cast into darkness. It said that the angels should place rough and jagged rocks on Azazel and cover him in darkness and let him abide there forever and cover his face so that he wouldn’t see light. In a similar fashion, Semjaza and the rest of the Watchers were also bound and held in the “valleys of the earth” where they will remain until Judgment Day.

Furthermore, it described the sin that the Watchers had committed to warrant this judgment against them. They “left the high heaven, the holy eternal place, and have defiled themselves with women.”

So, in other words, the Watchers were angels who left the place

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 10:11-14

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 12:4-5

where they were supposed to live (heaven), came to earth, defiled themselves with women, and are now bound in darkness, awaiting final judgment.

Keeping this in mind, let's look at what Jude wrote, and compare it to what Enoch had said. When warning about Christians falling away, Jude wrote:

**Jude 1:6**

“And remember **the angels who did not keep their own domain but left their proper dwelling place. The Lord has kept these angels in darkness, bound with everlasting chains,** to be judged on the great day.”

**1 Enoch 10:4-6**

“And again, the Lord said to Raphael: **‘Bind Azazel hand and foot and cast him into the darkness... and cover him with darkness, and let him abide there forever, and cover his face that he may not see light.’**”

**1 Enoch 12:4-6**

“Enoch, you scribe of righteousness, go, declare to **the Watchers of the heaven who have left the high heaven, the holy eternal place,** and have defiled themselves with women...”

Enoch said the angels were judged because they were in heaven and should have stayed in heaven, but they left and defiled themselves. Jude said the angels were judged because they left their proper dwelling place. Enoch also said that the Watchers would be bound, cast into darkness, and they would not see light. Jude said the angels were kept in darkness, bound with everlasting chains.

Is it not clear that Jude was referencing the Book of Enoch? There is no other story anywhere in the Bible that fits this description. Furthermore, as we have already seen, Jude directly quoted the Book of Enoch just a few paragraphs later. Clearly, he had the Book of Enoch in mind when he wrote these things.

What else could Jude have been referencing? Without the Book of Enoch, we can only assume that Jude knew some story the rest of us don't know.

Yet, Jude clearly assumed that we already knew this story. He did not teach the story first and then explain how it applies to our lives. No – he jumped straight to the application! He began with the assumption that his readers already knew what he was talking about!

Yet today, Christians have no idea what he was talking about! The

story is foreign to us.

Jude was not the only one who taught from this story. As I alluded to earlier, Peter also wrote about this story. Without the Book of Enoch in the background, Peter's account is just as confusing as what Jude said.

Compare what Peter wrote to the rest these accounts, and see for yourself whether Peter seemed to refer to the Book of Enoch:

**Jude 1:6**

“And remember **the angels who did not keep their own domain but left their proper dwelling place. The Lord has kept these angels in darkness, bound with everlasting chains,** to be judged on the great day.”

**2 Peter 2:4**

“**When Angels sinned,** God did not let them go free without punishment. **He sent them to Tartarus and put them in caves of darkness** where they are being held for judgment...”

**2 Peter 2:17**

“**A place in the blackest darkness** has been kept for [false teachers].”

**1 Enoch 10:4-6**

“And again, the Lord said to Raphael: ‘Bind Azazel hand and foot and **cast him into the darkness... and cover him with darkness, and let him abide there forever, and cover his face that he may not see light.**”

**1 Enoch 10:14**

“And **whosoever will be condemned and destroyed will from then on be bound together with them** to the end of all generations.”

**1 Enoch 12:4-6**

“Enoch, you scribe of righteousness, go, declare to **the Watchers of the heaven who have left the high heaven, the holy eternal place,** and have defiled themselves with women...”

Peter and Jude both taught their audience by referencing a story that does not exist in our Old Testament. Yet they explained this story as if you and I are supposed to already know it.

The angels left their proper dwelling place. They came down, did what was wrong, defiled themselves with women, God bound them in darkness with chains, and they are now awaiting final judgment.

In addition to this, Peter referred to false teachers and false Christians within the church. He compared them to those angels who had sinned, and he said, “a place in the blackest darkness has been kept for them.” So, Peter said that false teachers would receive the same punishment as the Watchers. This is the same thing Enoch had said. Enoch described the darkness where the Watchers were bound,

and then said that anyone who is to be condemned and destroyed would be bound together with them.

Therefore, any false teachers or false Christians would be bound in the blackest darkness with the Watchers. This is exactly what Peter said. Peter knew the Book of Enoch and taught from it as reliable fact.

If we don't know the Book of Enoch, these passages in Peter and Jude don't make any sense. Where did they get this from? These were some of the most confusing passages as I grew up in the church.

Peter and Jude not only expected us to already know this story – they expected us to already understand the lessons that we are supposed to learn from this story! Yet Christians have never even heard this story in the first place!

Why would Peter and Jude reference this story so directly and clearly unless it is something we are supposed to already know? Why would they use this story the way they did unless they truly believed that this story is completely true? They taught from the Book of Enoch in the same exact way that Paul taught from the Book of Exodus when he wrote to the Corinthians!<sup>1</sup> Like Paul, they summarized the story, but everyone knew what book was being referenced.

When you read the Book of Enoch, it is abundantly clear that this is the book they were talking about when they said these things. This is confirmed by Jude directly quoting the Book of Enoch just a few sentences later.

Not only did Peter and Jude reference this story in Enoch, but the phrasing they used is very close to an exact quotation!

Isn't this an example of the apostles quoting and teaching from a book that was excluded from the Old Testament? Why then do the leaders of the church tell us that didn't happen?

## THE WANDERING STARS

There is yet another reference to the Book of Enoch found in Jude's letter. In chapter 18, Enoch wrote about a horrible place he saw where some stars were bound as they waited for judgment.

This might be a little confusing for a modern reader, so it is worth noting here that throughout the Book of Enoch, as well as in the

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Corinthians 10:1-13



Bible itself, stars are angels. And in 1 Enoch 18, Enoch saw some stars bound up. He said:

“I saw there seven stars like great burning mountains... the stars which roll over the fire are they which have transgressed the commandment of the Lord in the beginning of their rising, because they did not come out at their appointed times. And He was angry with them and bound them until the time when their guilt should be consummated, even for ten thousand years.”<sup>1</sup>

So, Enoch saw seven stars burning, which were bound for ten thousand years because they had transgressed the commandment of the Lord. They didn’t come out at their appointed times.

This, in the ancient world, was a clear reference to what were known as *wandering stars*. We know them today as *planets*. We get our word from the Greek word *planétés*, which means *wandering*. So, essentially, we still call them wandering stars today – we just don’t realize it.

Why were they called wandering stars?

They were called wandering stars because when you watch the stars progress through the sky night after night, you can see that they all travel in unison – all except the planets. The planets wander. They go their own direction and do their own thing. So, the ancients called them *wandering stars*.

Enoch said he saw the wandering stars bound for ten thousand years because they did their own thing instead of coming out at their appointed time. Interestingly, he said that he saw seven of them. This is interesting because there are seven planets in the sky (this doesn’t include Earth – we’re talking about what we can see from the earth as we look up into the sky): Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune.

But what makes this especially interesting is that, according to modern science, Uranus and Neptune were only discovered fairly recently.<sup>2</sup> Yet, Enoch mentioned seven wandering stars – and he said that thousands of years ago. Maybe he knew what he was talking about.

However, my point for right now is this:

Jude kept referencing the story of Enoch all throughout his letter. He and Peter both warned their audience about false Christians and

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 18:13-16

<sup>2</sup> Uranus was discovered on March 13, 1781 by William Herschel. Neptune was discovered on September 23, 1846 by Johann Gottfried Galle and Heinrich Louis d’Arrest.

false teachers. Right in the midst of his other references to the Book of Enoch, Jude said this: “They are like stars that wander in the sky. A place in the blackest darkness has been kept for them forever.”<sup>1</sup>

Once again, Jude referred to something that Enoch had mentioned – the wandering stars. Once again, Jude also mentioned the blackest darkness – the place where fallen angels are held according to the Book of Enoch.

The Book of Enoch was clearly on Jude’s mind as he wrote his letter. There is no other explanation. Jude’s letter is the shortest book in the New Testament, yet he managed to slip in three separate references to the Book of Enoch, including one direct quotation!

Perhaps the Book of Enoch is relevant to his topic. Perhaps the Book of Enoch is important to know if we want to understand the apostasy Jude warned about.

## HEBREWS & THE PARABLE OF LAZARUS

The next parallel between the New Testament and the Book of Enoch can be found in 1 Enoch 9.

In this chapter, it describes some angels in heaven who were praising God. During their praise, they said something which appears to have been nearly directly quoted in the New Testament. Compare the two quotations below:

### Hebrews 4:13

“Nothing in all creation can be hidden from God. Everything is naked and lies open before him, and to him we must give an account.”

### 1 Enoch 9:5

“You have made all things and have power over all things, and all things are naked and open in your sight, and you see all things, and nothing can hide itself from you.”

Hebrews and Enoch both said that everything lies naked and open before God and that nothing can be hidden from God.

The writer of Hebrews, whoever it was – Paul or someone else – wrote what is nearly a direct quotation from the Book of Enoch. When you consider the fact that we’re working with man’s translations, it makes these two quotes nearly identical. This quote from Hebrews is very likely a direct quotation from the Book of

---

<sup>1</sup> Jude 1:13

Enoch.

So, once again we have an example from the New Testament where one of the apostles directly quoted (or at the very least, referenced) the Book of Enoch. Once again, the question must be posed: why do the Christian teachers tell us that this never happened?

Next, we can see another example where Jesus and Enoch both taught the same thing.

In the context of this story, Enoch was shown all sorts of different things in the physical world as well as in the spiritual world. He saw the secrets of creation – the hidden things about heaven, hell, and the earth. It is not the purpose of this book to dive into everything he said – but it is a very interesting read, especially for those with eyes to see and ears to hear.

Within this context, Enoch was shown a region at the ends of the earth. He said:

“And beyond these mountains is a region at the end of the great earth: there the heavens were completed. And I saw a deep abyss, with columns of heavenly fire, and among them I saw columns of fire fall, which were beyond measure alike towards the height and towards the depth. And beyond that abyss I saw a place which had no firmament of the heaven above, and no firmly founded earth beneath it; there was no water upon it, and no birds, but it was a waste and horrible place.”<sup>1</sup>

He then continued on to explain that this horrible place was a prison for some of the angels who disobeyed.

So, according to Enoch, there is an actual location where there exists a deep abyss which is immeasurable. And, on the other side of this abyss is a horrible place where angels are imprisoned.

Compare this to what Jesus said in the parable of the rich man and Lazarus. In this parable, a poor man named Lazarus lived a hard life and then died. A rich man also died. Lazarus is next seen sitting with Abraham, but the rich man is found in torment in Hades. The rich man sees Abraham and Lazarus far away and asked Abraham to send Lazarus to him to give him some relief. Compare Abraham’s response in this parable to what Enoch described:

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 18:9-12

**Luke 16:26**

“But Abraham said, **“...there is a great chasm set in place between you and us,** so no one can cross over to you, and no one can leave there and come here to us.””

**1 Enoch 18:9-12**

**“I saw a deep abyss... beyond measure alike towards the height and towards the depth.** And beyond that abyss I saw a place which had no firmament of the heaven above, and no firmly founded earth beneath it; there was no water upon it, and no birds, but it was a waste and horrible place.”

In this parable, Jesus described what it would be like for people after they die. Just like Enoch, he described a great chasm – a great abyss which separated the unrighteous from the righteous. Enoch described this same abyss. He said it was located at the ends of the earth, and it is such a great abyss that it cannot be measured. Furthermore, he said that the other side of the abyss contained a terrible, desolate wasteland which was where the angels would be held.

It is worth noting here that the Bible describes hell as a place that was prepared for the devil and his angels.<sup>1</sup>

So, Enoch and Jesus both described the exact same thing! When the unrighteous die, they will be sent to a place which was prepared for the devil and his angels. That place is on the other side of a great chasm – an abyss beyond measure – so great that no one can cross from one side to the other.

Jesus’ description is the exact same as Enoch’s description. Enoch wrote about spiritual things – things that no one had ever seen before. Yet he described them exactly as Jesus described them. We know Jesus knew what he was talking about – he is the Son of God. He knows what heaven and hell will be like, and he told us there is a great abyss between the two. So, we know this is an accurate description. But Enoch described it before Jesus did – and he described it accurately.

How is that possible unless it was a true vision from God?

This is something that occurred on numerous occasions. Enoch repeatedly described things that he could not have accurately described unless the Book of Enoch is truly Scripture.

---

<sup>1</sup> Matthew 25:41

## DESCRIPTIONS OF HEAVEN

As I said earlier, the Book of Enoch tells us about numerous visions Enoch had. He was taken into heaven, he was shown the places of judgment, he was shown how the earth operates, and many other things. He described these things in great detail.

As we read his accounts, there is something glaring that stares us right in the face: Enoch accurately described spiritual places and events in the exact same way as Jesus and the apostles. Enoch accurately described things that could only be described by someone who had truly experienced a revelation from God.

Here is an example:

“And after that I saw thousands of thousands and ten thousand times ten thousand, I saw a multitude beyond number and reckoning, who stood before the Lord of Spirits. And on the four sides of the Lord of Spirits I saw four presences, different from those that sleep not, and I learnt their names: for the angel that went with me made known to me their names and showed me all the hidden things. And I heard the voices of those four presences as they uttered praises before the Lord of glory.

“The first voice blesses the Lord of Spirits forever and ever. And the second voice I heard blessing the Elect One and the elect ones who hang upon the Lord of Spirits. And the third voice I heard pray and intercede for those who dwell on the earth and supplicate in the name of the Lord of Spirits. And I heard the fourth voice fending off the devils and forbidding them to come before the Lord of Spirits to accuse them who dwell on the earth.

“After that I asked the angel of peace who went with me, who showed me everything that is hidden: ‘Who are these four presences which I have seen and whose words I have heard and written down?’ And he said to me: ‘This first is Michael, the merciful and long-suffering; and the second, who is set over all the diseases and all the wounds of the children of men, is Raphael; and the third, who is set over all the powers, is Gabriel; and the fourth, who is set over the repentance unto hope of those who inherit eternal life, is named Phanuel.’ And these are the four angels of the Lord of Spirits and the four voices I heard in those days.”<sup>1</sup>

In this section, Enoch saw four “presences” in heaven. He

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 4:1-10

continued to mention these four presences numerous times throughout the rest of his visions. These four beings – Michael, Raphael, Gabriel, and Phanuel – were seen in the presence of God. They are different than all the other angels in heaven.

This description is remarkably similar to John’s description of God’s throne room in the Book of Revelation. Enoch and John both claim to have had a vision from God in which they saw God’s throne room. Enoch and John both describe God’s throne room in the exact same way. Yet we accept John’s account as Scripture, but completely reject Enoch’s account. Here is what John said:

“In the center and around the throne were four living creatures full of eyes in front and in back. The first living creature was like a lion. The second was like an ox. The third had a face like a man. The fourth was like a flying eagle. Each of these four living creatures had six wings and was full of eyes, inside and out. Day and night they never stop saying:

“‘Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God Almighty. He was, he is, and he is coming.’ These living creatures give glory, honor, and thanks to the One who sits on the throne, who lives forever and ever...

“Then I saw a Lamb standing in the center of the throne and in the middle of the four living creatures and the elders... When he took the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell before the Lamb... And they all sang a new song to the Lamb:

“‘You are worthy to take the scroll and to open its seals, because you were slain, and with your blood you ransomed people for God from every tribe, language, people, and nation. You made them to be a kingdom of priests for our God, and they will reign on the earth.’

“Then I looked, and I heard the voices of many angels around the throne, and the four living creatures, and the elders. There were myriads and myriads and thousands of thousands of angels, saying in a loud voice:

“‘The Lamb who was slain is worthy to receive power, wealth, wisdom, and strength, honor, glory, and praise!’ Then I heard all creatures in heaven and on earth and under the earth and in the sea saying:

“‘To the One who sits on the throne and to the Lamb be blessing and honor and glory and power forever and ever.’ The four living creatures said, ‘Amen,’ and the elders fell down and worshiped.”<sup>1</sup>

There are many similarities between Enoch’s description and

---

<sup>1</sup> Revelation 4:6-9; 5:6-14

JESUS, PETER, JUDE, JOHN... ALL QUOTED THE BOOK OF ENOCH?! (PT 1)

John's description. We'll try to break this down into a few sections to show how clearly they described the exact same thing.

To start, Enoch described the multitude he saw in heaven. Compare his description to John's:

**Revelation 5:11**

“There were **myriads and myriads and thousands of thousands of angels...**”

**1 Enoch 40:1-10**

“And after that **I saw thousands of thousands and ten thousand times ten thousand, I saw a multitude beyond number and reckoning, who stood before the Lord of Spirits.**”

John saw myriads and myriads and thousands of thousands of angels. Enoch saw thousands of thousands and ten thousand times ten thousand angels.

They both described the same thing! Not only had they seen the same thing, but they both chose very similar words to describe what they had seen.

In addition to this, both Enoch and John described four presences (or, four creatures) in heaven, in front of God's throne. Moreover, both John and Enoch said that these four angels praised God and praised Jesus. Enoch used the term “the Elect One”. We will come back to his descriptions of Jesus in a later chapter.

Compare what John described to what Enoch described in the Book of Enoch:

**Revelation 4:6**

“In the center and **around the throne were four living creatures...**”

**Revelation 4:8; 5:8-14**

“Each of **these four living creatures...** never stop saying: ‘Holy, holy, holy is the Lord God Almighty. He was, he is, and he is coming.’

**...the four living creatures** and the twenty-four elders **fell before the Lamb... And they all sang a new song to the Lamb...**

‘**The Lamb who was slain is worthy to receive power, wealth, wisdom, and strength, honor, glory, and praise! ...To the One who sits on the throne and to the Lamb** be blessing and honor and glory and power forever and ever.’

**The four living creatures** said, ‘Amen,’ and the elders fell down and worshiped.”

**1 Enoch 40:1-10**

“And **on the four sides of the Lord of Spirits I saw four presences...** And I heard the voices of **those four presences** as they **uttered praises before the Lord of glory. The first voice blesses the Lord of Spirits... the second voice I heard blessing the Elect One...**

“...And **these are the four angels** of the Lord of Spirits and **the four voices** I heard in those days.”

In these passages, Enoch and John both saw four living creatures. Enoch even named them and explained some of what their roles are in heaven.

Enoch and John both said these four living creatures were praising God and praising Jesus. Enoch called Jesus “The Elect One”, and John called Jesus “the Lamb.” In both descriptions, God is on his throne, the four creatures are around the throne, and they praised both God and the Lamb/Elect One.

The parallels between Enoch’s description of heaven and John’s description of heaven are glaring. Enoch claimed to have seen something that no man has ever seen. He described God’s throne room. He described the events and beings that are in heaven.

When we read John’s description in the Book of Revelation, we accept it as Scripture. We accept that John truly saw those things and described the truth about what was happening in heaven at God’s throne. But he described it the same way Enoch did. And Enoch was written first.

If the Book of Enoch is not Scripture, and this was not a real



vision, then how did he get it right? How did he know what was happening before John was ever around to tell us?

The Book of Enoch accurately described God's throne room in heaven, as well as what is happening within that throne room. He could not have done that if the Book of Enoch is fraudulent like the scholars tell us. The only way Enoch could have given us an accurate depiction of heaven that lines up perfectly with what John saw many years later is if the Book of Enoch details a true vision given to Enoch by God and written down as Scripture for our benefit.

This leaves the scholars in a difficult position. They claim that Enoch was not the one who wrote the Book of Enoch. But whoever wrote the Book of Enoch had clearly been welcomed into God's very throne room and was capable of giving an accurate description of it.

Yet, as we already saw at the beginning of this chapter, whoever wrote the Book of Enoch claimed to actually be Enoch. If the scholars are correct that it was not actually written by Enoch, then whoever wrote the Book of Enoch was a liar.

How does a liar get welcomed into God's throne room and accurately describe it?

There is only one possibility. The scholars must be wrong. The Book of Enoch must be what it claims to be – Scripture given to us by God through Enoch himself.

## JUDGMENT DAY

Enoch continued to accurately describe spiritual places and the events of the future. For example, he described Judgment Day, and his description of Judgment Day is the same as John's description.

Enoch's description of Judgment Day involves the Earth, Sheol, and Hell all giving back the dead to be judged. The Elect One (Jesus) will be the one who judges them, and he will choose the righteous and holy from among them.

In addition to this, Enoch said he was shown books that exist in heaven which describe all of the actions of every person for all of human history.

These same descriptions are all given in perfect detail in the Book of Revelation when John saw a vision of the same events. Once again, this is only possible if Enoch's description is truly Scripture. How else could someone accurately describe these things?

Compare Enoch's description to John's description in the Book

of Revelation:

**Revelation 20:12-13**

“And I saw the dead, great and small, standing before the throne. **Then books were opened, and another book, which is the book of life was opened. The dead were judged by what they had done, which was written in the books. The sea gave up the dead who were in it, and Death and Hades gave up the dead who were in them. Each person was judged by what he had done.**”

**1 Enoch 51:1-2**

“And **in those days will the earth also give back that which has been entrusted to it, and Sheol also will give back that which it has received, and hell will give back that which it owes.** For in those days the Elect One will arise, and he will choose the righteous and holy from among them; for the day has drawn nigh that they should be saved.”

**1 Enoch 81:1-2**

“And he said unto me: ‘Observe, Enoch, these heavenly tablets, and read what is written thereon, and mark every individual fact.’ And **I observed the heavenly tablets and read everything which was written thereon and understood everything and read the book of all the deeds of mankind, and of all the children of flesh that will be upon the earth to the remotest generations.**”

Once again Enoch and John described the same thing. John and Enoch both experienced a vision from God in which they saw Judgment Day. They both said that the earth and the grave would give back the dead so the dead could be judged. And they both said that the dead would be judged by their actions.

John said their actions are all recorded in the books in heaven, which will be used on Judgment Day. They will be judged based on what the books say because the books are a record of their actions.

Similarly, Enoch said that he was shown a number of books in heaven, and that he was given the opportunity to look through those books and take note of what they were, and what they said. He told us that those books contain a record of all the actions of every person who will ever live – all the way to the remotest generation in the distant future.

Think about that – thousands of years ago, even before the flood, Enoch was given books which described the actions and events of mankind all the way to the end of time. These books exist in heaven. Enoch read them. He mentioned these books numerous times

throughout the Book of Enoch. He called them “the heavenly tablets.” John saw those same books! John told us that we will all be judged by what is written in those books.

Enoch described the Book of Life. He described Judgment Day. And his description is an exact match to John’s description. He clearly saw the same thing John saw. Not only that, but he saw it before John did, and he described it before John did. His description matches John’s description perfectly, yet Enoch’s description is dismissed as uninspired while John’s is accepted as holy Scripture.

This is nonsensical. The only way Enoch could have given an accurate description of Judgment Day and the Book of Life is if Enoch’s account is just as valid as John’s.

## A RE-EVALUATION IS NEEDED

As we can see, there is already a lot of evidence that the New Testament writers considered the Book of Enoch to be Scripture. They quoted it, they taught from it, and they had visions which corroborated it. Yet, the Protestant church teaches us today that there is no evidence that the apostles considered anything else to be Scripture. They tell us that our Old Testament includes everything the apostles endorsed.

This is blatantly false. And even more troublesome is the fact that Protestant scholars are well aware of all the connections between the Book of Enoch and the New Testament. They know these things, but they hide them from the average Christian.

It is time to start re-evaluating what we have been taught and re-evaluating who we trust. Jesus and the apostles should be our authority when we determine what belongs in Scripture and what does not. But we need to know what they actually thought. We cannot just assume the scholars and teachers are telling us the truth. We must investigate for ourselves.

We have now seen eleven separate instances in which the New Testament in one way or another endorses the Book of Enoch. Our accepted canon of the Old Testament includes certain books which are endorsed less than this!

Yet, with the Book of Enoch, we have still barely scratched the surface...

# FOUR

## **Jesus, Peter, Jude, John... All Quoted the Book of Enoch?! Part 2**

**W**e have already seen that the New Testament draws from the Book of Enoch in many ways. When the Holy Spirit inspired the New Testament, he repeatedly quoted, taught from, or alluded to the Book of Enoch.

In this chapter, we will pick up where we left off and look at a few more examples of the Book of Enoch's influence on the New Testament.

To start, we will pick up the story in chapter eighty-nine. In this chapter, Enoch told a parable. This parable is the story of human

history – everything that he read written in those heavenly tablets. It tells about all the events which occurred from his time all the way to the end of history – Judgment Day, and the establishment of God’s Kingdom on earth. However, as a parable, it uses imagery and metaphors to convey the story. Specifically, it portrays all of the main characters and people-groups of the world as animals.

If we understand this parable, and if we understand the imagery, we will find that this parable was referenced numerous times in the New Testament. The apostles, Jesus, and others in the New Testament stories understood this parable and knew who the different animals represented.

This parable is long – it goes on for a few chapters. So, we won’t include the entire thing here. But we can look at a few sections of it to see how it was used in the New Testament.

To start, we will jump into the story at verse 10. In this section, Enoch described the events which occurred shortly after the flood. And, once again, all of humanity is depicted as various animals...

“And they began to bring out beasts of the field and birds, so that there arose different genera: lions, tigers, wolves, dogs, hyenas, wild boars, foxes, squirrels, swine, falcons, vultures, kites, eagles, and ravens; and among them was born a white bull. And they began to bite one another; but that white bull which was born among them begat a wild ass and a white bull with it, and the wild asses multiplied. But that bull which was born from him begat a black wild boar and a white sheep; and the former begat many boars, but that sheep begat twelve sheep. And when those twelve sheep had grown, they gave up one of them to the asses, and those asses again gave up that sheep to the wolves...”<sup>1</sup>

Here in this parable we see probably the shortest summary ever given of the book of Genesis. It described how humanity became divided into various people groups and nations. It described them as lions, tigers, wolves, dogs, etc. In their midst was born a white bull. This white bull was Abraham.

Abraham had two children – Ishmael (a wild ass) and Isaac (a white bull). Isaac then had two sons – Esau (a black wild boar) and Jacob (a white sheep). Jacob then had twelve sons (twelve sheep), and those sons handed Joseph over into slavery. They sold him to the Ishmaelites (the asses) who then sold him into Egypt (the wolves).

I paused at this point in the story because we can already see a few

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 89:10-13

things from this. Primarily, we can see this: Egypt, in this parable, was described as the wolves.

Why is this so interesting? Well, to understand the significance, we must first understand a number of things seen throughout the New Testament which many Christians tend to miss. The purpose of this book doesn't allow me to explain this topic entirely, but suffice it to say that the New Testament draws many parallels to the story of the Exodus in the Old Testament.

Jesus went down and lived in Egypt. He then was brought out of Egypt, he "passed through the water" when he was baptized, and then he went into the wilderness where he was tested for 40 days. While being tested in the wilderness, Jesus quoted very specific verses from Deuteronomy in which Moses had summarized what the people of Israel had learned while they themselves were tested in the wilderness for 40 years. After Jesus left the wilderness, he entered into Israel (the Promised Land) and began proclaiming the arrival of God's Kingdom.

In particular, Matthew did a very good job showing the parallel between the Exodus story and Jesus' life. If you read the Exodus story and then read the first four chapters of Matthew, it is almost like reading the same exact story. There are many parallels.

Jesus is the new Moses. He was sent by God to deliver his people out of slavery. The New Testament teaches explicitly that we are set free from sin – no longer slaves of sin. This is why Jesus did not die on the Day of Atonement – he died on Passover. It was about coming out of slavery. This is a very important topic for Christians to understand, but it is not my purpose for this particular book.

For the purpose of this book, we should just understand that there are many parallels between the Exodus story and what Jesus did. In addition to this, though Jesus delivers us from slavery, we still live in this world – we are still surrounded by our enemy.

Why is this important as we look at Enoch's parable? As we continue to read Enoch's parable, we begin to see some very familiar phrases. After Joseph was sold into slavery in Egypt, it says this:

"...that sheep grew up among the wolves. And the Lord brought the eleven sheep to live with it and to pasture with it among the wolves; and they multiplied and became many flocks of sheep. And the wolves began to fear them, and they oppressed them until they destroyed their little ones, and they cast their young into a river of much water; but those sheep began to cry aloud on account of their

little ones, and to complain unto their Lord.”<sup>1</sup>

Most Christians should immediately recognize the parallel here. In Enoch’s parable, the people of Israel were represented as sheep, they lived in Egypt. Egypt was represented as wolves. Compare what Enoch said to what Jesus later said:

**Matthew 10:16**

“Look, I am sending you out **like sheep among wolves.**”

**Luke 10:3**

“Go now, but look! I am sending you out **like sheep among wolves.**”

**1 Enoch 89:13**

“...that **sheep grew up among the wolves.**”

**1 Enoch 89:14**

“...the Lord brought **the eleven sheep to live** with it and to pasture with it **among the wolves...**”

Again, Jesus is the new Moses. His mission was to bring us out of slavery. His story echoes the Exodus story in many ways. According to Enoch, the Exodus story was about sheep living among the wolves. And Jesus told us that we are like sheep living among the wolves.

In fact, Jesus often referred to the people of Israel as sheep. To his original audience, all of these references would have pointed to this parable in the Book of Enoch where the Israelites were depicted as sheep, and when they were in Egypt, surrounded by their enemies, they were sheep living among the wolves.

When we recognize the parallels between the Exodus story and Jesus, it makes a lot of sense that Jesus would have used Enoch’s exact phrase.

In addition to this, we can see a few more examples where the New Testament referenced this parable in the Book of Enoch...

## “WILL YOU HELP ME?” “YOU’RE A DOG.”

As we follow the story in Enoch’s parable, we can recognize the events and people he described. Moses and Aaron led the people out of Egypt, they wandered the wilderness, and eventually Moses and Aaron died. Joshua and Caleb became the leaders and led the people into the Promised Land.

However, before Moses died, he told the people that when they

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 89:13-15

entered the Promised Land, they needed to drive out the Canaanites. He warned them that if they failed to drive them out, the Canaanites would become a thorn in their side, they would constantly attack, and they would lead God's people astray. If we read the Book of Judges, we can see that that is exactly what ended up happening – they failed to drive them all out, and the Canaanites became a thorn in their side, attacked them, and led them away from God.

In the Book of Judges, a Judge would rise up occasionally and bring the Israelites back to God. The people would then follow God until that Judge died, and then they would be led astray by the Canaanites again.

The Book of Enoch tells us this same story within Enoch's parable. He said, "And I saw until the sheep came to a goodly place, and a pleasant and glorious land... And sometimes their eyes were opened, and sometimes blinded, until another sheep arose and led them and brought them all back, and their eyes were opened."<sup>1</sup>

Enoch then continued in the story to describe King Saul, the prophet Samuel, and David:

"And the dogs and the foxes and the wild boars began to devour those sheep until the Lord of the sheep raised up a ram from their midst, which led them. And that ram began to butt on either side those dogs, foxes, and wild boars until he had destroyed them all. And that sheep whose eyes were opened saw that ram, which was among the sheep, until it forsook its glory and began to butt those sheep, and trampled upon them, and behaved itself unseemly.

"And the Lord of the sheep sent the lamb to another lamb and raised it to be a ram and leader of the sheep instead of that other ram which had forsaken its glory. And it went to it and spoke to it alone, and raised it to be a ram, and made it the prince and leader of the sheep; but during all these things those dogs oppressed the sheep. And the first ram pursued that second ram, and that second ram arose and fled before it; and I saw until those dogs pulled down the first ram.

"And that second ram arose and led the little sheep. And those sheep grew and multiplied; but all the dogs, and foxes, and wild boars feared and fled before it, and that ram butted and killed the wild beasts, and those wild beasts had no longer any power among the sheep and robbed them no more."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 89:40-41

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 89:42-48



So, in this section, Saul became king. He is the first ram. However, Saul stopped following God and began to oppress even his own people. As Enoch said, “[that ram] forsook its glory and began to butt those sheep, and trampled upon them, and behaved itself unseemly.”

When this happened, God sent the prophet Samuel to anoint David as the new king to replace Saul. As Enoch said, “the Lord of the sheep sent the lamb to another lamb and raised it to be a ram and leader of the sheep instead of that other ram which had forsaken its glory.”

During this time, the Canaanites continued to attack and oppress the people of Israel. As Enoch said, “during all these things those dogs oppressed the sheep.”

Finally, the Canaanites killed Saul. As Enoch said, “I saw until those dogs pulled down the first ram.” Then David became king and the Canaanites had no more power over the people of Israel.

Here is what makes this story significant when we look at the New Testament: Throughout Enoch’s parable, the Canaanites are represented as dogs. The Canaanites are the ones who oppressed the people of Israel during this time, and the Canaanites are the ones who killed King Saul. Enoch attributed both these events to “the dogs.” Therefore, the dogs represent the Canaanites in this parable.

This is directly referenced in a confusing passage in the New Testament:

“Jesus left that place and went to the area of Tyre and Sidon. A Canaanite woman from that area came to Jesus and cried out, ‘Lord, Son of David, have mercy on me! My daughter is severely demon-possessed.’ But Jesus did not answer her a word. So his disciples came to Jesus and begged him, ‘Tell the woman to go away. She is following us and shouting.’ Jesus answered, ‘I was sent only to the lost sheep, the house of Israel.’

“Then the woman came to Jesus again and bowed before him and said, ‘Lord, help me!’ Jesus answered, ‘It is not right to take the children’s bread and throw it to the dogs.’ The woman said, ‘Yes, Lord, but even the dogs eat the crumbs that fall from their masters’ table.’ Then Jesus answered, ‘Woman, you have great faith! I will do what you asked.’ And at that moment the woman’s daughter was healed.”<sup>1</sup>

For years this passage seemed very weird to me. This woman came

---

<sup>1</sup> Matthew 15:21-28

to Jesus, asking for help, and he called her a dog. Without any kind of background information, that seems kind of like an insult. But what always seemed even weird was the fact that the woman in the story wasn't even phased by it! She wasn't taken aback that Jesus called her a dog – no, she immediately agreed with him!

This is weird! Why did Jesus call her a dog? And why did she respond the way she did? For years, I couldn't understand this story – until I finally read the Book of Enoch.

There are a few things to note about this story. When the woman first came to Jesus, the disciples asked him what to do, and Jesus responded by saying that he was only sent to the lost sheep. This itself was a reference to this parable in the Book of Enoch. Jesus often referred to God's people as sheep. Why? Because in Enoch's parable, which everyone at the time was familiar with, the people of Israel were sheep.

So, as soon as this woman came to Jesus, he immediately drew the attention of the disciples back to this parable in the Book of Enoch. Then, when the woman approached him, he called her a dog. Was this an insult? No – which is why she wasn't offended. He called her a dog because in this ancient parable (which again, everyone at the time was familiar with), the Canaanites were represented by dogs. And this woman was a Canaanite.

In our culture, especially without the Book of Enoch in the background, this story makes no sense. But to the woman and Jesus, this made perfect sense. Why? Because they all knew that Jesus was referencing this parable in the Book of Enoch.

Jesus was simply telling her that it was not right for him to take what was meant for God's people and to give it to the Canaanites who had been the enemies of God's people. But the Canaanite woman understood that God had promised that all the nations of the earth would be blessed through his people.<sup>1</sup> Moreover, she probably also knew that at the end of Enoch's parable, all the animals were united with the sheep and they were all transformed into white bulls.<sup>2</sup> In other words, God's blessing would one day extend to all the nations, and they would all be welcomed in.

The Canaanite woman knew this parable, and she gave her allegiance to the God of Israel and his Anointed King because she knew the outcome of this parable. This is why Jesus praised her faith

---

<sup>1</sup> Genesis 22:18; 26:4

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 90:33-38

after she responded.

The point being – without the Book of Enoch, it makes absolutely no sense for Jesus to call this woman a dog. And it makes even less sense for her to not be phased by it. But, if understand that they all knew the Book of Enoch, then we can easily understand what was happening in this story. Jesus called the woman a dog because the Canaanites were dogs in Enoch's vision. This is another reference back to the Book of Enoch.

## THE UNCLEAN GENTILES

As we look at this parable in the Book of Enoch, there is at least one more reference worth nothing. This can be found in verse 10 where it told us about how humanity was divided up into various people groups and nations. Each animal represented a different people group or nation. Let's look at that list again:

“And they began to bring out beasts of the field and birds, so that there arose different genera: lions, tigers, wolves, dogs, hyenas, wild boars, foxes, squirrels, swine, falcons, vultures, kites, eagles, and ravens; and among them was born a white bull... that white bull which was born among them begat a wild ass and a white bull with it, and the wild asses multiplied. But that bull which was born from him begat a black wild boar and a white sheep; and the former begat many boars, but that sheep begat twelve sheep.”<sup>1</sup>

In this passage, as humanity was divided up into various nations and people groups, there is a very important thing to notice: All of God's people are clean animals, and all of the Gentiles are unclean animals:<sup>2</sup>

**God's People:**

Bulls and Sheep

**Gentiles:**

Lions, tigers, wolves, dogs, hyenas, wild boars, foxes, squirrels, swine, falcons, vultures, kites, eagles, ravens, and asses

When we realize that unclean animals represented the nations, then we can begin to understand the purpose of all the food laws and all the laws regarding clean or unclean animals.

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 89:10-12

<sup>2</sup> Compare this list to Leviticus 11

Scripture tells us that the Law of Moses was intended to teach us.<sup>1</sup> Therefore, we should try to understand what it was that the Law taught. It was never intended to just be a list of rules. It was intended to teach us something. It is the same as someone making rules for their kids:

Don't go in the street.

Don't touch the electrical outlets.

Don't turn on the oven.

The rules are not meant to be in place for that child's entire life. The rules are meant to teach safety. Once the child is grown and can think as an adult, the rules no longer apply. Ideally, that child grew up, learned what those rules were meant to teach and learned how to make smart decisions and practice safety. As a grownup, that child is allowed to walk into the street, touch electrical outlets, and use the oven. The rules were always intended to teach a concept. They were not rules just for the sake of rules.

This is what Paul taught about the Law of Moses in the New Testament. People were trying to follow the rules without ever learning the point of those rules. Paul wanted them to mature.

So, we should try to understand the concepts that the Law teaches instead of just viewing it as rules for the sake of rules. One clear example of this can be seen when we compare the Book of Enoch to the New Testament.

In the Book of Acts in chapter 10, Peter had a vision. It says:

“The next day, as they were on their journey and approaching the city, Peter went up on the housetop about the sixth hour to pray. And he became hungry and wanted something to eat, but while they were preparing it, he fell into a trance and saw the heavens opened and something like a great sheet descending, being let down by its four corners upon the earth. In it were all kinds of animals and reptiles and birds of the air. And there came a voice to him: ‘Rise, Peter; kill and eat.’ But Peter said, ‘By no means, Lord; for I have never eaten anything that is common or unclean.’ And the voice came to him again a second time, ‘What God has made clean, do not call common.’ This happened three times, and the thing was taken up at once to heaven.

“Now while Peter was inwardly perplexed as to what the vision he had seen might mean, behold, the men who were sent by Cornelius, having made inquiry for Simon's house, stood at the gate

---

<sup>1</sup> Galatians 3:24

and called out to ask whether Simon who was called Peter was lodging there. And while Peter was pondering the vision, the Spirit said to him, ‘Behold, three men are looking for you. Rise and go down and accompany them without hesitation, for I have sent them.’”<sup>1</sup>

If we continue this story, we can see that Peter ended up in the house of a bunch of Gentiles. This was very unusual. The Jewish people normally would never have done that because the Gentiles were considered unclean – just like those unclean animals in Peter’s vision. But Peter said to those Gentiles:

“You people understand that it is against our law for Jewish people to associate with or visit anyone who is a Gentile. But God has shown me that I should not call any person common or unclean. That is why I did not argue when I was asked to come here.”<sup>2</sup>

So, in other words, Peter had a vision about unclean animals in which God told him that those unclean animals had been made clean. Peter said that this is why he didn’t argue when he was asked to join the Gentiles. But if we look at the story, we can see that he was asked to join those Gentiles mere moments after having the vision.

Somehow, in a matter of a few seconds, Peter had connected the dots – he understood that when God had said the unclean animals were made clean, he was talking about the Gentiles. How did he figure it out so fast?

When God told Peter that the unclean animals had been made clean, Peter instantly knew he was talking about the Gentiles. Why? Because in Enoch’s vision, the unclean animals represented the Gentiles. Peter was able to make the connection very quickly because he understood the background. He understood the point of the laws about clean and unclean animals.

Just like how a parent makes rules for a child which are meant to teach concepts, the laws about unclean animals were also not rules just for the sake of rules. Those laws were meant to teach and reinforce a concept.

God’s people were told over and over throughout the Law to stay away from the Gentiles – don’t associate with them, don’t join yourselves to them, don’t marry them. They will lead you astray.

God did not want his people to be joined to the nations because the nations will lead his people away from him. This is why the

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 10:9-20

<sup>2</sup> Acts 10:28-29

Gentiles were unclean.

When we don't include the Book of Enoch in our Bibles, it is very hard for us to see that the rules about the animals were meant to teach the people about the Gentiles. It is hard for us to see that when God said, *these animals are unclean*, he was telling them, *stay away from the nations*. But when we look at the Book of Enoch, it becomes very clear, and we easily arrive at the same conclusion as Peter.

The Book of Enoch was written hundreds of years before the Law of Moses. It told us that certain animals represented the Gentiles. Then, in the Law of Moses, God essentially told the people, *You should not join yourselves to these other nations because they will lead you away from me. So, here's a picture to keep in your life to constantly remind you of this: All of those animals that represent the Gentiles are unclean for you. Stay away.*

Throughout the Old Testament, this law would have been an ongoing reminder that God's people were to remain separate from the Gentiles. They were not to marry them, join them, become like them, or anything else. They were to remember that the Gentiles were unclean just like the animals who represented them.

However, God did not intend for this law to remain forever. He intended his people to learn the point – do not do the things the Gentiles do.

Once God's people learned this point, he demonstrated that even the Gentiles could be made clean (if, of course, they repented of the things they did and were washed clean by God). God came to Peter and said, *You see all these animals? I have now made them clean. Go to the Gentiles.*

The Book of Enoch is an integral part of this story. If we want to understand the rest of what we see in the Old and New Testaments, we need to understand where it all started.

Peter understood why those animals were unclean in the first place. He understood what they represented. He knew the purpose and point of the Law. The food laws were meant to constantly remind the people that they must stay away from the nations and not join them or become like them.

However, “in Christ, there is neither Jew nor Greek... You are all one in Christ Jesus. If you belong to Christ, then you are Abraham's seed and will inherit the promise.”<sup>1</sup>

In Christ, there is no more Jew or Gentile, which means there is no clean or unclean animal. This is why God gave Peter the vision

---

<sup>1</sup> Galatians 3:28-29

that he gave him. This is also how Peter so quickly understood the vision. It makes total and complete sense in light of the Book of Enoch, and we have already seen that Peter was very familiar with the Book of Enoch – after all, he himself taught from it in his letters.

## WOE TO YOU RICH

Moving on from Enoch's parable, there are a few more examples I would like to include before we wrap up this first section of the book.

When we read the Book of James in the New Testament, we can find yet another example of influence from the Book of Enoch. Compare the two passages below:

### James 5:1-5

**“You rich people, come now! Weep and be very sad because of the miseries that are coming to you. Your riches have rotted, and your clothes have been eaten by moths. Your gold and silver have corroded, and that corrosion will be a proof that you were wrong. It will eat your flesh like fire. You stored up your riches in the last days. The wages you did not give the workers who mowed your fields cries out against you, and the cries of the workers have been heard by the Lord All-Powerful. Your life on earth was full of luxury and pleasing yourselves with everything you wanted. You made yourselves fat for a day of slaughter.”**

### 1 Enoch 94:8-9

**“Woe to you, you rich, for you have trusted in your riches, and from your riches will you depart, because you have not remembered the Most High in the days of your riches. You have committed blasphemy and unrighteousness, and have become ready for the day of slaughter, and the day of darkness and the day of the great judgment.”**

In these passages, James and Enoch both announced misery coming to the rich who had trusted in their riches. According to both of them, the rich will lose their riches because they were unrighteous and wicked. James flushed this out a little more than Enoch did, but the point is the same. They then both concluded their statements by telling the rich that they had made themselves like a fattened animal for a day of slaughter.

Though it is not a direct quote, the train of thought is identical, and many of the phrases used are identical. James may not have been directly quoting Enoch, but he certainly had this passage in the back of his mind when he wrote this.

Once again, we have a clear example where we can see that the apostles were not only aware of the Book of Enoch, but they quoted it, taught from it, and referenced it in their letters.

## AS HIGH AS A HORSE'S BRIDLE

Finally, in chapter 100, Enoch wrote about the Day of Judgment that is coming at the end of the world. Similarly, as we know, John wrote about the Day of Judgment when he wrote the Book of Revelation.

Both Enoch and John claim to have seen visions of the Day of Judgment, and both described it in detail. Compare what they both claim to have seen:

**Revelation 14:20**

“They were trampled in the winepress outside the city, and **blood flowed out of the winepress as high as horses’ bridles** for a distance of about one hundred eighty miles.”

**1 Enoch 100:3**

**“The horse will walk up to the breast in the blood of sinners,** and the chariot will be submerged to its depth.”

Yet again we can see another example where Enoch wrote a description of something that he should not have been able to describe accurately unless he truly had a vision of the future given to him by God. Yet he did describe it accurately.

Enoch accurately told the future. There is only one conclusion. God himself has told us what that conclusion is: “I am God, and there is none like me, declaring the end from the beginning and from ancient times things not yet done.”<sup>1</sup>

God has told us that there is none like him who can declare the end from the beginning and tell us from ancient times about things that have not yet happened. There is no one who can do that except God alone.

So then, the question is – how did Enoch do it?

Enoch declared the end from the beginning. In ancient times, he

---

<sup>1</sup> Isaiah 46:9-10 (ESV)



described things that still have not yet occurred. This is only possible if God spoke through him. This is only possible if the Book of Enoch is truly Scripture.

Once again, we have proof right before our eyes that there is more to the Book of Enoch than the scholars will admit. The only question now is – what are we going to do with this information?

## MOVING ON

We're going to wrap up the first section of this book here. We have been focusing on what we're calling *generic* references in the New Testament to the Book of Enoch.

As stated at the beginning, this has not been an exhaustive list of every reference. This has still barely scratched the surface. But it provides enough of an overview to show that there is an undeniable pattern: The Book of Enoch was influential on divinely inspired Scripture. More than that, the Book of Enoch accurately prophesied about future events and described things in the spiritual realm accurately.

We have been taught that there are no other books that could possibly belong in the Bible. We have been taught that our Bible includes every single book that the apostles quoted as Scripture in the New Testament. This is a blatant lie from people who know full well how influential the Book of Enoch was on the New Testament.

Once again, the biblical scholar Dr. Michael S. Heiser said about the Book of Enoch, “Peter knows this literature. And because he’s read it, he has a fuller picture of what Genesis 6:1-4 means – how it operates, why it’s there, why the first four verses make sense of the fifth verse... Peter understands that, and he uses it in his discussion to avoid false teachers. It makes perfect sense across the board for him to do this.”<sup>1</sup>

He also said, “The Book of Life, these heavenly books – there’s a lot of stuff like that in Enoch. The lake of fire, final judgment, the general apocalyptic stuff that you read in the book of Revelation – guess what, Enoch was there first! Peter quotes from Enoch, Jude quotes from Enoch. There’s a lot in the gospels that again, are directly traceable to things in Enoch. It has its fingerprints on the New Testament in a lot of places, even if it’s not a direct quotation.”<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=h5Z04SJENVE>

<sup>2</sup> <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KHPaRbV0f1k>

## ENOCK

Christian scholars know how much the New Testament taught from or referenced the Book of Enoch. Yet they seem to think that the Holy Spirit would teach from a fraudulent book – because those same people claim that the Book of Enoch is not Scripture and was not written by Enoch as it claims to be.

If Jesus and the apostles were influenced by the Book of Enoch, taught from the Book of Enoch, and quoted the Book of Enoch, then we should stop dismissing it as if we know better than they did. The scholars of today are not smarter than Jesus. If Jesus and the apostles approved of this book, then so should we – with zero regard for what the scholars say.

# FIVE

## **This is the Biggest Proof that Enoch is Scripture**

**I**n the first section of this book, we cross-referenced numerous places throughout the New Testament which had some connection to the Book of Enoch. However, until now, we have only covered what we are calling *generic* references. These were passages which taught or explained various truths across a wide range of topics.

Throughout the next few chapters, we will narrow in on one particular topic: the Messiah – Jesus himself.

The New Testament teaches us many things about Jesus. It tells us about his life, death, and resurrection. It tells us that he is the King. It tells us that he is the Son of God who existed before time began.

It tells us that he will judge the world. It teaches all sorts of truths about Jesus.

However, many of the things written by the apostles are very difficult to find anywhere in the Old Testament. In fact, many non-Christians today make the accusation that the apostles made it all up! They claim that the ancient Jewish texts never prophesied the things the apostles said about Jesus in the New Testament.

Where does the Old Testament say that the Messiah will be the Son of God? Where does it say that he will judge the living and the dead? Where does it say that every knee will bow before him? Where does it say that he will die and rise from the dead?

These things are difficult to find in the Old Testament of the Christian Bible. There are some passages that do convey some of these things, but they are obscure and often do not even directly state that they are referring to the Messiah.

So, where did the apostles get their information? Did they make it up as the non-Christians claim? Did they learn it through some mysterious revelation from the Holy Spirit which informed them of things not taught elsewhere in Scripture? Why then did the apostles often state that the Scriptures taught these things? Where?

This entire confusion can be put to rest when we recognize that the apostles taught from the Book of Enoch. The Book of Enoch prophesied about Jesus and taught about who he is more explicitly than any other passage found in the Old Testament.

This is an extremely bold statement. Our goal for this next section is to prove that this is true.

## JESUS BROUGHT THE GAVEL DOWN AGAINST THE WATCHERS

Before we look at the details that Enoch wrote about Jesus, there is one passage worth mentioning which is often overlooked. This particular passage is, I think, the greatest proof that the Book of Enoch is truly Scripture.

I understand that the entire concept that the Book of Enoch belongs in Scripture is a big pill to swallow. I totally understand that. It was not something I initially accepted either.

I first started looking at the Book of Enoch when I learned that this was the book Jude had quoted in his letter. That intrigued me. I wanted to learn more about what it was – but I didn't at all think it

was Scripture. I became even more interested when I realized that Jude called it prophecy. Suddenly I realized that Jude had not only quoted this book, but he had given it some level of endorsement. But I was still not convinced.

As I read the Book of Enoch, I was fascinated as I found countless passages which were directly reflected throughout the New Testament. I began to question my view of the canon of Scripture. Why did the apostles teach so much from this non-canonical book? The more I studied it, the more I began to think that this book might actually belong in the Bible.

But I was still not fully convinced. It was just such a big pill to swallow. If only I could find something in the Book of Enoch that proved, beyond a shadow of a doubt, that the Book of Enoch was truly inspired Scripture.

Then, one day, I saw it. It was staring me right in the face. It was a verse in Enoch I was probably most familiar with. It was one of the most well-known verses from the Book of Enoch. And it solidified everything for me.

So – what was that verse?

As we have already seen, the Book of Enoch tells us the story of the Watchers (led by a Watcher named Semjaza) who descended to earth, married women, and had children. Those Watchers taught mankind all sorts of evil and spread corruption. Eventually, God issued a judgment against them:

“And the Lord said unto Michael: ‘Go, bind Semjaza and his associates who have united themselves with women so as to have defiled themselves with them in all their uncleanness. And when their sons have slain one another, and they have seen the destruction of their beloved ones, bind them fast for seventy generations in the valleys of the earth, until the day of their judgment and of their consummation, until the judgment that is for ever and ever is consummated. In those days they will be led off to the abyss of fire, and to the torment and the prison in which they will be confined forever. And whosoever will be condemned and destroyed will from then on be bound together with them to the end of all generations.’”<sup>1</sup>

God’s judgment against the Watchers was that they would be bound and imprisoned for seventy generations in the valleys of the earth. They would be held until their judgment was consummated, at which point they would be led off to the abyss of fire.

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 10:11-14

For those who aren't aware, this is a passage that many people talk about. There are a growing number of Christians who read the Book of Enoch and recognize it as a true story. Some of them regard it as Scripture, and some of them do not. But, in either case, they talk about this particular passage a lot.

Why is this passage so fascinating to people? It's because these verses say that the fallen angels – the Watchers – would be bound for seventy generations until their judgment is consummated. Some translations say they are bound until their judgment is completed. A lot of people talk about this passage because they want to know when those seventy generations will be finished.

Many people think this passage could mean that the Watchers are bound for seventy generations, and then released again. This is because of the translations which say *completed* instead of *consummated*. If the correct translation is that the Watchers are bound for seventy generations until their judgment is completed, then it does seem to imply that the day would come when those Watchers would be released from their prison.

The question people have is this: If the Watchers are going to be released again, when is that going to happen? When will those seventy generations be complete?

The reason people wonder about this is because in the Book of Enoch, the Watchers taught mankind all sorts of things that mankind was never supposed to know. When you read what they taught people, it very much lines up with what we call *science* today. It sounds like they introduced advanced knowledge and technology in the ancient past prior to the flood. In addition to this, as we will see in a later chapter, there is a huge amount of evidence in the historical and archaeological record to back this up. The Watchers taught mankind advanced knowledge and technology. History today has forgotten these things because our education system teaches us a certain worldview. But the evidence exists to verify this story. We will examine that evidence in a later chapter.

So, then the question arises – have the Watchers been released? Is this why we find ourselves once again in the midst of an advanced civilization with incredible technology? People recognize that the Watchers taught these things in the ancient past, and now we have advanced knowledge once again. Could it be that the seventy generations have been fulfilled? Could it be that their judgment was completed, and they were released?

The Book of Psalms says that a person's life is about seventy or

maybe eighty years.<sup>1</sup> Some people have then calculated that, if a generation is seventy years, then seventy generations would have been 4900 years. Enoch lived approximately 3000 years before Jesus. This would put the Watchers' release at about the year 1900 AD. Coincidentally, this is right about when our technological age really took off.

So then, have the Watchers been released? Are they back on earth? Is this where our technology comes from? Where are they? Or rather, who are they?

These are the sort of questions many people are asking online. And this is why I was very familiar with this particular passage. I had often tried to solve this riddle for myself – what is a generation? Why does this passage say the Watchers would be bound for seventy generations? What happens after that? Do they get released? I wanted to know what it meant.

Then I saw that the word in Enoch could be translated *consummated* instead of *completed*. In fact, many people don't realize that the word *consummated* comes from Latin *consummat*, which meant *brought to completion*. So, in a sense, *consummated* and *completed* really mean the same thing.

However, in the context of this passage, it doesn't necessarily mean that their judgment is complete, and they are released. No, the word could be understood another way. It could be understood as saying that their judgment is finalized. Or, in other words, the Watchers would be held for seventy generations until the judgment is complete and the gavel comes down.

This understanding makes sense in the context because it said that after the seventy generations were completed, they would be led off to the abyss of fire where they would be confined forever. So, it doesn't really sound like they get released. It sounds like it might mean that they are held until their judgment is finalized – as in, the gavel comes down, their sentence is complete, and there is no going back.

I don't deny that our modern technological age is connected to what the Watchers did thousands of years ago during the time of Enoch. I don't deny that at all – I think it is very connected, and something we should take very seriously.

But I am convinced that this is not what Enoch was talking about when he told us about the seventy generations. I am convinced that

---

<sup>1</sup> Psalm 90:10

Enoch was referring to the time when the judgment of the Watchers would be finalized – as in, when the gavel comes down and there is no going back. They don't get released. They get sentenced.

Why am I convinced of this?

Because we know exactly when those seventy generations were completed – and it's not the modern age. As I said earlier, it's staring us right in the face.

So, what am I talking about?

Well, if we want to understand this passage, we need to first identify a point in time seventy generations after Enoch - because Enoch was the one alive when God issued this decree.

Next, we should look for something that occurred at that point in time. Seventy generations after Enoch, we should see some event occur which can be easily understood as the judgment of the Watchers being consummated, completed, finalized, or in some other way fulfilling what Enoch wrote. They are either released or condemned.

If we cannot find something that fulfills what Enoch said, then either we have not figured out what Enoch meant by seventy generations, or the Book of Enoch was wrong, and cannot be Scripture. However, if we can prove that the Book of Enoch was correct, and something did occur seventy generations after Enoch, then the Book of Enoch accurately predicted the future, which is something only God can do. This would prove that the Book of Enoch should be considered Scripture.

Instead of trying to figure out what a generation is, or calculating the number of years, what if we just took it literally? What if we just assumed that the word *generation* means exactly what we all know it means? My dad is one generation before me. His dad was two generations before me. It's not complicated.

Is there a way to take the word *generation* literally and check to see if something occurred seventy generations after Enoch? Yes, there is.

As it turns out, we can see very clearly that seventy generations after Enoch, the judgment of the Watchers was sealed – it was finalized. The gavel came down, and there was no going back. To see this, we must look at the Book of Luke.

In Luke's gospel account, he provided a very long genealogy – the longest one recorded in Scripture. It spanned all the way from Adam to Jesus. It included Abraham, David, and Zerubbabel, which all marked pivotal points in the story of God's Kingdom. Using Luke's genealogy, we can count the generations beginning with Enoch to



see what event occurred seventy generations later. Is there anything that happened seventy generations after Enoch that could have consummated the judgment of the Watchers?

Here is the list of generations starting from Enoch, according to Luke's genealogy:

**Luke 3:23-37**

1. Methuselah	25. Boaz	49. Shealtiel
2. Lamech	26. Obed	50. Zerubbabel
3. Noah	27. Jesse	51. Rhesa
4. Shem	28. David	52. Joanan
5. Arphaxad	29. Nathan	53. Joda
6. Cainan	30. Mattatha	54. Josech
7. Shelah	31. Menna	55. Semein
8. Eber	32. Melea	56. Mattathias
9. Peleg	33. Eliakim	57. Maath
10. Reu	34. Jonam	58. Naggai
11. Serug	35. Joseph	59. Esli
12. Nahor	36. Judah	60. Nahum
13. Terah	37. Simeon	61. Amos
14. Abraham	38. Levi	62. Mattathias
15. Isaac	39. Matthat	63. Joseph
16. Jacob	40. Jorim	64. Jannai
17. Judah	41. Eliezer	65. Melki
18. Perez	42. Joshua	66. Levi
19. Hezron	43. Er	67. Matthat
20. Arni	44. Elmadam	68. Heli
21. Admin	45. Cosam	69. Joseph
22. Amminadab	46. Addi	70. Jesus
23. Nahshon	47. Melki	
24. Salmon	48. Neri	

What happened exactly seventy generations after Enoch?  
Jesus happened.

Exactly seventy generations after Enoch, the judgment of the Watchers was consummated. It was finalized. It was set in stone, the gavel came down, and there was no going back. Seventy generations after Enoch, the Anointed King came to earth, redeemed mankind, and sealed the fate of the fallen angels.

More than two thousand years before Jesus, Enoch prophesied with pin-pointed accuracy down to the very generation when the judgment of the Watchers would be sealed. Only true prophecy can be that accurate. Only true Scripture can do what the Book of Enoch did.

No, the seventy generations was never about the Watchers being released, and it was not talking about our modern technological age. The seventy generations were fulfilled when their judgment was finalized two thousand years ago at the seventieth generation from Enoch, when Jesus came.

This is why Paul said that if the spiritual rulers of this world had known what God's plan was, they never would have crucified Jesus.<sup>1</sup> They sealed their own fate when they killed him.

The spiritual rulers of this age probably knew that the seventieth generation had come. They knew God was about to do something. They were watching for it. Then, there he was – God's own Son here in the flesh. They knew they had to stop him. They knew they had to take him out of the picture because it was time for the judgment to be sealed. So, they stirred up their own people to kill him. But in doing so, they consummated their own judgment.

The Book of Enoch told us that it would be exactly seventy generations from Enoch that this judgment would be finalized. And exactly seventy generations after Enoch, Jesus was born. Only Scripture can prophesy the truth with that extraordinary level of accuracy.

Once again, be reminded that even the scholars recognize that the Book of Enoch was written long before Jesus. They deny the Book of Enoch and claim it was written by someone else, yet they cannot deny that it existed at least a few hundred years before Christ.

This means it did in fact predict the future. It did in fact prophesy in complete accuracy. No one denies that it existed prior to Jesus – yet it told us exactly when to expect him – down to the very generation.

So, as far as I'm concerned, we could end this book right here. The Book of Enoch must be Scripture. There is no other plausible explanation. Nothing else can do what Enoch did.

However, even though the argument should be closed, there is an abundance of evidence we have yet to cover.

Enoch said much more about Jesus than this. Enoch taught extensively about Jesus throughout his book. His teachings informed the apostles, and we can easily identify Enoch's fingerprints all throughout the New Testament as the apostles taught us who Jesus is.

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Corinthians 2:8

## THE ELECT ONE

In the Book of Enoch, Enoch told us about an individual whom he called the Elect One, the Righteous One, and at one point, he even called him the Anointed One (which is what the word *Christ* or *Messiah* means).

Enoch did not merely allude to this Elect One. No, he wrote about him in great detail. And what he wrote about the Elect One was used extensively by the apostles as they taught the early Christians about Jesus. If we know what Enoch said, then we can easily recognize where the apostles gained their knowledge.

Throughout the next few chapters, we will explore what Enoch had to say about the Elect One, and we will see how his descriptions were understood by the apostles in the New Testament.

To begin, we start in chapter thirty-eight. This is where Enoch first began to introduce this coming Messiah. He said:

“The first Parable. When the congregation of the righteous will appear, and sinners will be judged for their sins, and will be driven from the face of the earth. And *when the Righteous One will appear before the eyes of the righteous, whose elect works hang upon the Lord of Spirits*, and light will appear to the righteous and the elect who dwell on the earth. Where then will be the dwelling of the sinners, and where the resting-place of those who have denied the Lord of Spirits? It had been good for them if they had not been born.”<sup>1</sup>

This is the first direct mention of this Messiah, here referred to as the Righteous One.

It is very interesting to note that he said this will occur when “the congregation of the righteous will appear.” Why? Because in the New Testament, the word that is typically translated as *church* is the Greek word *ekklesia*. *Ekklesia* does not mean *church*. That is a bad translation which has a long history as to why they chose that word.<sup>2</sup> *Ekklesia* means *assembly* or *congregation*. So, in other words, the word *church* in

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 38:1-2

<sup>2</sup> In short, the word *church* comes from the Old English word *circe*, which referred to a building – a location. Many also conjecture that it comes from the Greek word *Kyriakos*, which does not exist anywhere in the Bible, and didn't even exist in the Greek language until the 300s AD, when it was first used to describe a building used for religious purposes. It was adopted and used by the Roman Catholic Church to reinforce the concept that the church is a location and an institution. The word *church* referred to any religious building – including pagan temples. William Tyndale's translation of the Bible only used the word *church* twice (Acts 14:13, 19:37) – both referenced pagan temples, not God's people.

the New Testament actually means *assembly* or *congregation*. It referred to a gathering of people – not a building or institution.

So, when Enoch first began to introduce the Messiah, he told us that he was referring to the time when the congregation of the righteous would appear – or, in our modern (incorrect) terminology, the Messiah would be revealed at the time when the church of the righteous would appear. So, that is already a direct connection to the New Testament.

But, beyond that, in this passage Enoch introduced us to a character he called the Righteous One. Throughout the following chapters, he gave more detail as to who this Righteous One is:

“And in those days a whirlwind carried me off from the earth and set me down at the end of the heavens. And there I saw another vision, the dwelling-places of the holy, and the resting-places of the righteous. Here mine eyes saw their dwellings with His righteous angels, and their resting-places with the holy. And they petitioned and interceded and prayed for the children of men, and righteousness flowed before them as water, and mercy like dew upon the earth. So it is among them forever and ever. And in that place mine eyes saw *the Elect One of righteousness and of faith, and I saw his dwelling-place under the wings of the Lord of Spirits. And righteousness will prevail in his days, and the righteous and elect will be without number before him forever and ever.*

“And all the righteous and elect before him will be strong as fiery lights, and their mouth will be full of blessing, and their lips extol the name of the Lord of Spirits, and *righteousness before him will never fail, and uprightness will never fail before him.* There I wished to dwell, and my spirit longed for that dwelling-place.”<sup>1</sup>

So, Enoch saw a vision of heaven. In heaven, he saw the righteous living with the angels. And with them he saw the Elect One of righteousness and faith. This Elect One is the one who brings righteousness and he gives strength to all God’s people.

In other words, Enoch saw Jesus. He not only saw him, but he saw that Jesus is the one who will strengthen God’s people and establish righteousness for all eternity.

As we continue on, we come back to a passage we have already seen earlier in this book. In chapter forty, Enoch saw heaven and described it the same way John did in Revelation. John told us that he saw myriads and myriads and thousands of thousands of angels in heaven who were praising God and praising the Lamb. In Revelation,

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 39:3-8

the Lamb is clearly Jesus.

The Book of Enoch tells us the same thing, but referred to the Lamb as the Elect One:

“And after that I saw thousands of thousands and ten thousand times ten thousand, I saw a multitude beyond number and reckoning, who stood before the Lord of Spirits. And on the four sides of the Lord of Spirits I saw four presences... And I heard the voices of those four presences as they uttered praises before the Lord of glory. The first voice blesses the Lord of Spirits forever and ever. And the second voice I heard blessing *the Elect One* and the elect ones who hang upon the Lord of Spirits.”<sup>1</sup>

So, we can see that Enoch kept referring to a person in heaven whom he called the Elect One or the Righteous One. This person is Jesus – the coming Messiah. But this has all been just an introduction to this character. It wasn't until chapter forty-five that Enoch really began explaining who Jesus is, and what he will do:

“And this is the second parable concerning those who deny the name of the dwelling of the holy ones and the Lord of Spirits. And into the heaven they will not ascend, and on the earth they will not come. Such will be the lot of the sinners who have denied the name of the Lord of Spirits, who are therefore preserved for the day of suffering and tribulation. *On that day mine Elect One will sit on the throne of glory and will try their works*, and their places of rest will be innumerable. And their souls will grow strong within them when they see mine elect ones, and those who have called upon my glorious name. *Then will I cause mine Elect One to dwell among them*. And I will transform the heaven and make it an eternal blessing and light and I will transform the earth and make it a blessing. And I will cause mine elect ones to dwell upon it, but the sinners and evil-doers will not set foot thereon.

“For I have provided and satisfied with peace my righteous ones and have caused them to dwell before me. But for the sinners there is judgment impending with me, so that I will destroy them from the face of the earth.”<sup>2</sup>

So, here we can see that the Elect One will sit on a throne of glory and will judge the earth. There will be a new heaven and a new earth, and the sinners will not be allowed to set foot on the new earth.

Then, in chapter forty-six, Enoch said:

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 40:1-5

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 45:1-6

“And there I saw One who had a head of days, and his head was white like wool, and *with him was another being whose countenance had the appearance of a man, and his face was full of graciousness, like one of the holy angels.* And I asked the angel who went with me and showed me all the hidden things, concerning *that Son of Man, who he was, and from where he was, and why he went with the Head of Days?* And he answered and said unto me: *‘This is the Son of Man who has righteousness, with whom dwells righteousness, and who reveals all the treasures of that which is hidden, because the Lord of Spirits has chosen him, and whose lot has the pre-eminence before the Lord of Spirits in uprightness forever.*

“And *this Son of Man* whom you have seen will raise up the kings and the mighty from their seats, and the strong from their thrones and will loosen the reins of the strong and break the teeth of the sinners. And he will put down the kings from their thrones and kingdoms because they do not extol and praise him, nor humbly acknowledge from where the kingdom was bestowed upon them.”<sup>1</sup>

In this passage, Enoch described the Elect One as *the Son of Man*. Now, if you are at all familiar with the New Testament, you should know that Jesus repeatedly referred to himself as *the Son of Man*.<sup>2</sup>

Most of the time, Christian teachers will tell us that this was a reference to the Book of Daniel. In the Book of Daniel, Daniel described the Messiah and called him a *Son of Man*.

Yes, Jesus probably was referring to Daniel. But there is no reason to say that he wasn’t also referring to the Book of Enoch. We can already see that the Book of Enoch was referenced heavily throughout the writings and teachings of the New Testament. Jesus himself referenced the Book of Enoch on multiple occasions, and even called it Scripture. So, there is no reason to think that Jesus referred exclusively to the Book of Daniel when he called himself the Son of Man. Enoch also referred to the Messiah as *the Son of Man*. Quite frankly, Enoch used that phrase a lot more than Daniel did.

The phrase *son of man* was simply an idiom which meant *human*. It was a way of saying that the Messiah would be a human. We shouldn’t get too caught up in the phrase itself. However, that exact phrase, *Son*

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 46:1-5

<sup>2</sup> Matthew 8:20, 9:6, 10:23, 11:19, 12:8, 12:32, 12:40, 13:37, 13:41, 16:13, 16:27, 16:28, 17:9, 17:12, 17:22, 18:11, 19:28, 20:18, 20:19, 20:28, 24:27, 24:30, 24:37, 24:39, 24:44, 25:31, 25:33, 26:2, 26:24, 26:45, 26:64; Mark 2:10, 2:28, 8:31, 8:38, 9:9, 9:12, 9:31, 10:33, 10:45, 13:26, 14:21, 14:41, 14:62; Luke 5:24, 6:5, 6:22, 7:34, 9:22, 9:26, 9:44, 9:56, 9:58, 11:30, 12:8, 12:10, 12:40, 17:22, 17:24, 17:26, 17:30, 18:8, 18:31, 19:10, 21:27, 21:36, 22:22, 22:48, 22:69, 24:7; John 1:51, 3:13, 3:14, 5:27, 6:27, 6:53, 6:62, 8:28, 9:35, 9:37, 12:23, 12:34, 13:31

*of Man*, was repeatedly used by Enoch to describe Jesus all throughout the Book of Enoch.<sup>1</sup> Whereas Daniel only used the phrase twice.<sup>2</sup> Why do we assume that Jesus exclusively referenced Daniel when he used the phrase?

Aside from the phrase itself, look at what Enoch said about the Son of Man in this passage.

Enoch said this Son of Man would “reveal all the treasures of that which is hidden, because the Lord of Spirits has chosen him.” This is a concept which was taught in the New Testament as well:

**Colossians 2:2-3**

“This leads to their knowing fully God’s secret, that is, **Christ himself. In him all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden.**”

**1 Enoch 46:3**

**“This Son of Man... reveals all the treasures of that which is hidden”**

Paul taught that all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden in Christ, and he wants us to know Christ so that we can have those treasures – so that we can fully know God’s secret. If you know Christ, you can know all God’s secrets.

This is something Paul also explained in 1 Corinthians 2:6-16. It is not possible to know someone else’s thoughts unless that person’s spirit is inside of you. But now, through Jesus, we have God’s Spirit inside of us, therefore we can know God’s own thoughts. Paul taught this concept repeatedly. It’s important for us to understand.

However, in this passage, Paul specifically said that the treasures of wisdom and knowledge are hidden in Christ. And Enoch said that the Son of Man is the one who reveals all the treasures that are hidden.

Enoch and Paul both said the same thing. The treasures of God’s secrets are hidden in Christ. Jesus is the one who reveals those treasures that are hidden. It would seem that Paul was aware of what Enoch had already said. He knew that the Son of Man reveals the treasures that are hidden.

If Paul taught about Jesus from the Book of Enoch, then shouldn’t we also learn about Jesus from the Book of Enoch?

This passage may not seem very convincing by itself – but that is

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 46:2, 46:3, 46:4, 48:2, 62:5, 62:7, 62:9, 62:14, 63:11, 69:26, 69:27, 69:29, 70:1, 71:14, 71:16

<sup>2</sup> Daniel 7:13, 10:26

## ENOCH

because it is merely the beginning. Enoch has now introduced us to the Elect One – that Son of Man. Throughout the next few chapters, we will see just how much his descriptions matched what the apostles taught about Jesus.

If, when teaching about Jesus, the apostles truly did teach the same thing as Enoch, then the Book of Enoch must have been where they got their information – because the Book of Enoch was written first.



# SIX

## **The Book of Enoch Proves Jesus is the Son of God**

**T**he Book of Enoch explained certain things about Jesus which were taught by Jesus and the apostles throughout the New Testament. These were truths about Jesus' nature – who he is – that are crucial parts of the message of the New Testament. Yet, these were truths that we cannot find anywhere else in our traditional Old Testaments.

At the very beginning of this book, we gave a brief history of the canon of Scripture for the Old Testament. We saw that the canon of the Old Testament was compiled by the rabbinical Jews long after Jesus. Specifically, it was put together by a guy named Rabbi Akiva about a hundred or so years after Jesus.

These were the Pharisees. They had rejected Jesus and they hated the apostles. One of their main goals was to stop the spread of Christianity. They wanted to discredit the Christian movement.

This historical context is very important for us to remember as we examine the passage we will read in this chapter.

There are many people who read the New Testament, then they read the Old Testament (but not the Book of Enoch), and they say *I don't understand where the apostles got all this from. Everything they said about Jesus is not backed up by the Old Testament.*

The reality is – if we are honest when we look at the Old Testament, we have to acknowledge that it is hard to find many direct prophecies about Jesus in Old Testament passages. There are some! But there are not many, and those that are there are often not very clear. In fact, there is not a single Old Testament verse (again, not including the Book of Enoch) that says, “the Messiah will do this.”

Moreover, it is near impossible to find anything in the Old Testament that tells us that the Messiah would be the Son of God or have an eternal nature. There is nothing that tells us he existed before time began. The Old Testament provides us with little proof that the Messiah would be anything more than a human.

Atheistic unbelievers recognize this. They point to this discrepancy and make the accusation that Jesus’ divine nature was invented after the fact. They claim that the apostles (or later Christians) made it all up.

In fact, modern Rabbinical Judaism points to the same discrepancy. They also claim that the divine nature of the Messiah was made up by the Christians. They say that this was not something Jews believed prior to the Christian age. They claim that Jews always expected the Messiah to be nothing more than a man. And they point to the Old Testament to back up their argument.

But there is a reason for this. The Old Testament doesn’t say these things about Jesus because the Old Testament has been tampered with!

The early Church, the apostles, and Jesus all taught from the Book of Enoch. They used the Book of Enoch to teach people about who Jesus is and how he fulfilled the Scriptures. They brought very convincing arguments which showed that Jesus had fulfilled all that was written in the Scriptures – and much of what they referenced came from the Book of Enoch, not our traditional Old Testament.

When forming the canon of Scripture, Rabbi Akiva and the rabbinical Jews were backed into a corner. If they acknowledged the

Book of Enoch as true Scripture, then they would be forced to acknowledge much of what the Christians taught as well. In order to reject Jesus and everything the Christians said about Jesus, Rabbi Akiva only had one choice – he rejected the Book of Enoch as uninspired.

This is why we cannot find the truths about Jesus in the Old Testament. Those truths were purposefully removed after the fact.

It is a definite fact that the Book of Enoch existed long before Jesus. It is an ancient Jewish text. Moreover, it is an ancient Jewish text which Jesus and the apostles viewed as Scripture – as did many other Jewish people at the time. The Book of Enoch explicitly teaches all of the things that atheists and Rabbinical Jews claim were invented by Christians.

This means the atheists and Rabbinical Jews are wrong! The ideas about the Messiah which were taught throughout the New Testament were not new ideas – they existed long before the Christian age. Those ideas can all be seen in the Book of Enoch.

## THE FIRSTBORN OF ALL CREATION

We are going to focus on one particular passage in this chapter. It is far from the only place in the Book of Enoch that teaches these concepts, but it is very clear – the Messiah was more than just a man.

This passage is an incredible passage which beautifully tells us who Jesus is. It was written in the Book of Enoch prior to Jesus. We know it pre-dates him, and we know it pre-dates everything the apostles wrote about him.

This not only proves to the skeptics that the apostles didn't make up these concepts, but it also proves that the apostles taught from the Book of Enoch and were informed by this book as they grew in their understanding of who Jesus is. Take a look:

“And at that hour *that Son of Man* was named in the presence of the Lord of Spirits, and his name before the Head of Days. Yea, *before the sun and the signs were created, before the stars of the heaven were made, his name was named before the Lord of Spirits*. He will be a staff to the righteous on which to stay themselves and not fall, and he will be the light of the Gentiles, and the hope of those who are troubled of heart.

“All who dwell on earth will fall down and worship before him and will praise and bless and celebrate with song the Lord of Spirits. *And for this reason has he been chosen and hidden before him, before the creation*

*of the world and forevermore.* And the wisdom of the Lord of Spirits has revealed him to the holy and righteous. For he has preserved the lot of the righteous, because they have hated and despised this world of unrighteousness and have hated all its works and ways in the name of the Lord of Spirits. For *in his name they are saved*, and according to his good pleasure has it been in regard to their life.”<sup>1</sup>

This is such an incredible description of the Anointed One – the Messiah. Further in this chapter, Enoch referred to this Son of Man as *the Anointed One* – which is what the word *Messiah* means in Hebrew, and it is what the word *Christ* means in Greek. So, without a doubt, this is who Enoch was talking about. He was talking about Christ – the Anointed One.

According to the Book of Enoch, which was written a long time before Jesus, the Messiah predates creation. His name was named before the sun and the stars were created. He was there and he was hidden with God before the creation of the world. (Keep this in mind, as we will return to this concept of being “hidden with God” in the next chapter.)

Moreover, in the context, Enoch said that he himself saw the Messiah! So, he was actually there at the time of Enoch!

This means the apostles didn’t make up their ideas about who Jesus is. This means, contrary to what modern Rabbinical Jews think, the ancient Jewish people did in fact expect the Messiah to be more than just a man. This was not a new concept introduced by Christians. This was a concept which existed long before Jesus came.

Furthermore, we can clearly see that the apostles got their understanding of Jesus from this text. They taught the exact same things. If they received their knowledge of Jesus from this text, then this text has some level of authority!

There is so much to unpack in this passage. It not only tells us that Jesus existed before creation, but it also tells us that he is “a staff to the righteous” and “the light of the Gentiles.” It tells us that all who dwell on earth will fall before him. It tells us that he is revealed to the holy and righteous – and that they are saved in his name.

These are all things the apostles taught about Jesus! There is no denying that the apostles were familiar with this passage! All those things that the apostles taught about Jesus are seen right here in the Book of Enoch. All those things that cannot be found anywhere else in the Old Testament can be found right here in the Book of Enoch.

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 48:2-7

We cannot deny that the apostles knew this text and taught from this text. Look at what the apostles said about Jesus, and compare it to what Enoch said:

**Colossians 1:15-20**

“The Son is the image of the invisible God. **He is the firstborn of all creation. In him all things were created - things in heaven and on earth, things seen and unseen, all thrones, authorities, lords, and rulers. All things were created through Christ and for Christ. He was there before anything was made, and all things continue because of him.** He is the head of the body, which is the church. **He is the beginning.** He is the firstborn from the dead. **So in all things Jesus has supremacy.** God was pleased for all of his fullness to live in him. **And through him, God has reconciled all things to himself** - things on earth and things in heaven.”

**1 Enoch 48:2-7**

“And at that hour that Son of Man was named in the presence of the Lord of Spirits, and his name before the Head of Days. Yea, **before the sun and the signs were created, before the stars of the heaven were made, his name was named before the Lord of Spirits. He will be a staff to the righteous on which to stay themselves and not fall, and he will be the light of the Gentiles, and the hope of those who are troubled of heart. All who dwell on earth will fall down and worship before him** and will praise and bless and celebrate with song the Lord of Spirits. **And for this reason has he been chosen and hidden before him, before the creation of the world and forevermore. And the wisdom of the Lord of Spirits has revealed him to the holy and righteous. For he has preserved the lot of the righteous, because they have hated and despised this world of unrighteousness and have hated all its works and ways in the name of the Lord of Spirits. For in his name they are saved,** and according to his good pleasure has it been in regard to their life.”

Look at this comparison. Is there really any way we can deny that Paul knew what Enoch had said?

Enoch said Jesus existed before creation. Then Paul said Jesus is the firstborn of all creation, that through him all things were created, and that he was there before anything was made.

If you don't read the Book of Enoch, then you have to assume that the apostles were taught something separate from Scripture – because the Old Testament does not say these things! There is nowhere in the Old Testament that tells us any of this stuff about

Jesus. We could conclude that the apostles learned it apart from Scripture – from Jesus himself, or from the Holy Spirit – except for the fact that it’s right there in the Book of Enoch!

They had this book! We know they had it. Jude quoted it. Peter taught from it. Jesus referenced it. We know they had the Book of Enoch – which means it is not a coincidence that they taught the very same things about Jesus that Enoch himself had already said.

The Book of Enoch came first, and then Paul said the same thing. Where do you think he got it from?

Was this something Paul received from the Holy Spirit that had never been revealed before? No – because Enoch said it first. Paul was not teaching something new that had never been taught before – he was pointing his readers back to the Book of Enoch, reminding them of something that they already knew.

Paul was not the only one who taught these things about Jesus. Let’s look at some other examples.

John wrote, “*In the beginning there was the Word. The Word was with God, and the Word was God. He was with God in the beginning. All things were created through him, and nothing came to be without him... He was in the world, and the world was created through him, but the world did not know him. He came to his own, but his own people did not receive him... The Word became flesh and lived among us. We saw his glory - the glory that belongs to the only Son of the Father.*”<sup>1</sup>

Here we see another example. John told us that Jesus existed in the beginning – he was with God, and he was God. Jesus existed prior to creation.

Was John the first person to ever teach this? No – we can see this very same concept in the Book of Enoch.

Similarly, shortly before Jesus died, he prayed and said, “*And now, Father, glorify me in your presence; give me the glory I had with you before the world was made... Father I want these people that you gave me to be with me where I am so that they may see my glory, which you gave me because you loved me before the creation of the world.*”<sup>2</sup>

Jesus himself attested to the fact that he existed before the creation of the world. Obviously, Jesus didn’t learn this from Enoch – Jesus knew this because it was him. But Enoch wrote about it roughly three thousand years before Jesus came. The fact that Enoch was correct means that he knew what he was talking about. It means

---

<sup>1</sup> John 1:1-3, 10-11, 14

<sup>2</sup> John 17:5, 24

that when he said he saw Jesus, he actually did! It means the Book of Enoch is Scripture. Otherwise, how did Enoch know?

If Enoch is not Scripture, then how did he accurately explain concepts about Jesus that even the Old Testament didn't explain?

Jesus told us that the Scriptures testify about him. He said, "The Father himself who sent me has given testimony about me..."<sup>1</sup> What was that testimony? He explained: "You carefully study the Scriptures because you think they give you eternal life. They do in fact testify about me, but you refuse to come to me to have that life."<sup>2</sup>

The Scriptures testify about Jesus. They tell us who he is. Yet Jesus said something about himself that is not found in what we traditionally call Scripture! He said, "I tell you the truth, before Abraham was even born, I am!"<sup>3</sup>

In other words, Jesus said the Scriptures tell us about him, and shortly afterwards he said that he existed before Abraham. Yet the only place in Scripture that says this is in the Book of Enoch. It's not in the traditional canon of the Old Testament.

Paul, John, and Jesus himself all confirmed that what Enoch said was true. Therefore, this is more than just a cool passage to read. It is cool! I love this passage! But this passage is more than that. This passage demonstrates how accurate the Book of Enoch really is. It didn't just teach a few generic truths – it accurately told us who Jesus is, and it did so before he ever came.

Enoch was the first one to write about Jesus. He saw him for himself. He told us that there is an Anointed One who would come someday – an Anointed One who was hidden with God, but who existed before the sun and the stars were made. He told us that the righteous would be saved in his name. Enoch said these things first – before Jesus, before any of the apostles, before any Christian.

This proves the atheists wrong. This proves Rabbinical Judaism as wrong. The ancient Jewish people knew that the Messiah would be more than just a human. They knew they were waiting for the one Enoch had seen – the firstborn of all creation who was hidden with God before time began.

This right here is why the Book of Enoch is not in the Bible. Rabbi Akiva removed the Book of Enoch for one reason and one reason alone: He had to. He either had to remove the Book of Enoch, or he

---

<sup>1</sup> John 5:37

<sup>2</sup> John 5:37-40

<sup>3</sup> John 8:58

had to accept the man who fulfilled everything Enoch had prophesied.

We are only hurting ourselves when we don't read this book. This book informed the apostles. They learned about Jesus from the things Enoch wrote.

When we choose to not read the Book of Enoch, we miss out on some of the most important prophecies ever written. When we choose to not read the Book of Enoch, we lose the ability to explain to our atheist or Jewish friends that the New Testament is perfectly in line with the ancient Jewish expectations for the Messiah.

Jesus and the apostles expounded on the Book of Enoch – they explained the implications and what it means for us. They showed that Jesus fulfilled the prophecies. But they built on the foundation that had already been laid by Enoch.

This text was crucial to everything they taught in the New Testament. It is time to let go of our human traditions and accept the Book of Enoch for what it is – prophetic Scripture, breathed out by God, and profitable for us to learn, grow, understand, and mature.



# SEVEN

## **Enoch Prophesied About Jesus More than the Old Testament**

**W**e have now seen that Enoch was referenced by the apostles throughout the New Testament. We have seen that they taught extensively from it and used it to explain essential truths. We have seen that the Book of Enoch prophesied accurately about Jesus – both when he would come, and who he would be.

In this chapter, we will continue to look at Enoch’s prophecies about Jesus. He wrote many things about the Elect One – that Son of Man who existed before time began. Once again, we will see that the apostles taught the same things Enoch had previously written.

To start, we will pick up at the same passage we covered in the last chapter to look at a few more things Enoch said in that section

which we didn't emphasize yet.

For example, Enoch said, "He will be a staff to the righteous on which to stay themselves and not fall, and he will be the light of the Gentiles, and the hope of those who are troubled of heart."<sup>1</sup>

According to the Book of Enoch, Jesus would be "the light of the Gentiles." This, of course, is a crucial teaching found in the New Testament. Through Jesus, God opened the way for the Gentiles to be saved. This verse is echoed throughout both the Old and New Testaments:

**1 Enoch 48:4**

"He will be a staff to the righteous on which to stay themselves and not fall, and he will be **the light of the Gentiles**, and the hope of those who are troubled of heart."

**Isaiah 42:6**

"The LORD says, 'I, the LORD, called you to demonstrate my righteousness, and I will hold your hand and keep you. I will establish you as a covenant for the people, **a light to shine for the Gentiles.**'"

**Luke 2:32**

"Simeon took the baby in his arms and praised God... 'I have seen your salvation, which you prepared before all people. It is **a light of revelation for the Gentiles** and the glory for your people, Israel.'"

**Acts 13:46-47**

"But Paul and Barnabas spoke very boldly, saying, '...We will now go to the Gentiles. For this is what the Lord commanded us, saying: "I have made you **a light for the Gentiles** to bring salvation to the ends of the earth.'"

**Acts 26:22-23**

"But I am saying only what the prophets and Moses said would happen – that the Messiah would suffer, and as the first to rise from the dead, **he would bring light** to his own people and **to the Gentiles.**"

Obviously, Enoch was not the only one who said this, but it was a fundamental part of the gospel preached by the apostles. This description began in the Book of Enoch, it was used in the Old Testament, and then it found its fruition in the New Testament when God opened the way of salvation for the Gentiles.

In this same passage, Enoch also said, "All who dwell on earth will fall down and worship before him and will praise and bless and celebrate with song the Lord of Spirits."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 48:4

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 48:5

Here we see another truth about Jesus which was explained in the New Testament, but cannot easily be found in the Old Testament. It tells us that everyone on earth will one day fall down and worship the Messiah and praise God. Later in his book, Enoch again taught this truth in chapter sixty-two. This is yet another fundamental truth which Enoch wrote about long before the New Testament.

As we can see below, the New Testament taught this exact same truth:

**Philippians 2:9-11**

“So God raised [Jesus] to the highest place. God made his name greater than every other name so that **every knee will bow to the name of Jesus – everyone in heaven, on earth, and under the earth. And every tongue will confess that Jesus Christ is Lord and bring glory to God the Father.**”

**1 Enoch 48:5**

**“All who dwell on earth will fall down and worship before him and will praise and bless and celebrate with song the Lord of Spirits.”**

**1 Enoch 62:1-16**

**“...they will see and recognize how he sits on the throne of his glory... Then pain will come upon them... when they see that Son of Man sitting on the throne of his glory. And the kings and the mighty and all who possess the earth will bless and glorify and extol him who rules over all, who was hidden... And all the kings and the mighty and the exalted and those who rule the earth will fall down before him on their faces, and worship and set their hope upon that Son of Man and petition him and supplicate for mercy at his hands...”**

According to Enoch, the day will come when everyone will fall down before Jesus. They will bow before him in worship and will also sing praises about God. Paul said the same thing – every knee will bow to Jesus, every tongue will confess that Jesus is Lord, and every tongue will bring glory to God the Father.

Enoch and Paul both gave the exact same description. Clearly Paul had read the Book of Enoch!

Finally, in this chapter of the Book of Enoch, Enoch ended by describing the judgment of the sinners. He concluded that passage by explaining why the sinners were judged and found guilty:

“For they have denied the Lord of Spirits and his Anointed.”<sup>1</sup>

In the New Testament, the word which is translated *Christ* is the Greek word Χριστός (*Christos*). It means *Anointed*. It referred to someone who has been anointed to be the king or ruler of the people. We get the word *Messiah* from the Hebrew word מָשִׁיחַ (*Mashiach*). It also means *Anointed*, and it carried the same meaning as the Greek word. So, all throughout the New Testament, when Jesus was referred to as *Christ*, it was actually referring to him as *the Anointed* – specifically, the Anointed King.

According to Enoch, sinners will be judged because they denied God and they denied the Anointed – Jesus. This is obviously the same thing the New Testament taught about salvation. Salvation comes through giving our allegiance to Jesus and submitting to him as the Anointed King.<sup>2</sup>

**Matthew 10:33**

“But **all who deny me before people I will also deny them** before my Father in heaven.”

**Luke 12:9**

“But **all who deny me before people, I will deny them** before God’s angels.”

**John 20:31**

“But these are written **so that you may believe that Jesus is [the Anointed]**, the Son of God. **Then, by believing, you may have life through his name.**”

**2 Timothy 2:12**

**“If we deny him, he will deny us.”**

**1 Enoch 48:9-10**

“As straw in the fire so they will burn... and there will be no one to take them with his hands and raise them, **for they have denied** the Lord of Spirits and **his Anointed.**”

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 48:10

<sup>2</sup> For those wondering why I did not say “believe” in Jesus, and why I included submission instead of just belief, please see our book *Dead Church*. It is available completely for free on our website, [www.ActsInitiative.com](http://www.ActsInitiative.com). Suffice it to say, *faith*, *believe*, and *belief* did not mean the same in ancient Greek as they have come to mean in English, and many Christians are now holding to a false gospel of *belief alone* when that is not the gospel which was preached by the apostles and Jesus. They preached a gospel which called people to give their allegiance (faith) to the Anointed King. That is the correct understanding of the Greek word often translated as *faith* or *believe*. For further reading (though I do not advocate for everything said in these books): *Salvation through Allegiance Alone* by Matthew W. Bates, *Gospel Allegiance* by Matthew W. Bates, and *Faithing...: What Does it Mean...to “Believe”?* by Fred R. Ryman.

Enoch understood that sinners would be judged because they denied God and God's Anointed King. Enoch proclaimed this as truth long before the Church Age, yet it is exactly what Jesus and the apostles taught throughout the New Testament.

This means Enoch taught the truth. He knew God has a chosen Anointed King whom people must accept for salvation. This is an incredibly accurate description of the gospel as taught in the New Testament – yet it was written long before Jesus ever came, and long before the apostles explained these things to the Church.

At the very least, this means the Book of Enoch is accurate and truthful. At most, it means the apostles gained some of their understanding from the Book of Enoch. In either case, it demonstrates that the Book of Enoch is credible, truthful, and prophetic.

## JESUS – THE RIGHTEOUS JUDGE

Due to the large number of passages we will cover throughout the remainder of this chapter, I am unable to show comparisons between Enoch and the New Testament for all of the similarities. I will point out a few, but for the most part, I will rely on the fact that the majority of my readers already know what the New Testament says about Jesus and can recognize these connections for themselves. My goal in this chapter is to simply show you how much Enoch wrote about Jesus so you can see for yourself how clearly the Book of Enoch is reflected throughout the New Testament.

Many of the truths about Jesus which are taught in the New Testament cannot be found in the Old Testament – but the Book of Enoch states those same truths explicitly. As we read what it said, it becomes very clear that the apostles knew the Book of Enoch, gained understanding from it, and taught others the truths which are found within it.

If this is true, then we can recognize that the apostles considered the Book of Enoch to be Scripture. Today's Christian leaders tell us the Book of Enoch is uninspired and fraudulent. But the apostles and Jesus are a higher authority than the scholars and teachers of today. If they considered it to be Scripture, then we should as well.

So, with the expectation that most of my readers can draw the

connections to the New Testament for themselves, let's continue reading through the Book of Enoch to see what it taught us about our Lord...

Immediately after the passage we just examined, Enoch continued into the next chapter, describing this Anointed One. He said:

“For wisdom is poured out like water, and glory fails not before him forevermore. For *he is mighty in all the secrets of righteousness*, and unrighteousness will disappear as a shadow, and have no continuance because *the Elect One stands before the Lord of Spirits, and his glory is forever and ever, and his might unto all generations. And in him dwells the spirit of wisdom, and the spirit which gives insight, and the spirit of understanding and of might, and the spirit of those who have fallen asleep in righteousness. And he will judge the secret things, and none will be able to utter a lying word before him. For he is the Elect One* before the Lord of Spirits according to his good pleasure.”<sup>1</sup>

Yet again, this is such an incredible description of Jesus found within the Book of Enoch – written long before the Christian Age. It is easy to recognize that the apostles taught these exact same things about Jesus in the New Testament. Enoch described the glory of Jesus, his righteousness, his power, his Spirit, and his wisdom. He proclaimed that Jesus will judge the secret things and no one will be able to lie to him. These truths are all echoed in the New Testament as the apostles wrote about Jesus.

As we continue on, we come back to a passage which we already examined in an earlier chapter. Enoch described Judgment Day. When we looked at this earlier, we noted the similarities between this passage and what John said in the Book of Revelation. However, this time, I want you to notice what Enoch specifically said about Jesus in this passage:

“And in those days will the earth also give back that which has been entrusted to it, and Sheol also will give back that which it has received, and hell will give back that which it owes. For in those days *the Elect One will arise, and he will choose the righteous and holy from among them, for the day has drawn nigh that they should be saved. And the Elect One will in those days sit on my throne, and his mouth will pour out all the secrets of wisdom and counsel;* for the Lord of Spirits has given them to him and has glorified him.”<sup>2</sup>

According to Enoch, Judgment Day is a day on which the Elect

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 49:1-4

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 51:1-3

One will judge the world. This means it is not God the Father who will sit on the judgment seat, but it is Jesus. Jesus will judge the world and separate the righteous from the sinners.

We can see the same thing in the New Testament. Jesus said that he will be the one who separates the sheep from the goats,<sup>1</sup> and Paul said that we will all stand before the judgment seat of Christ.<sup>2</sup> According to both Enoch and the New Testament, Jesus is the one who will judge on Judgment Day.

Later, in chapter fifty-two, Enoch said he saw a vision of numerous mountains. These were mountains made of iron, copper, silver, gold, soft metal, and lead. An angel then explained this vision to him. The angel said:

“these mountains which your eyes have seen, the mountain of iron, and the mountain of copper, and the mountain of silver, and the mountain of gold, and the mountain of soft metal, and the mountain of lead – *all these will be in the presence of the Elect One as wax before the fire*, and like the water which streams down from above upon these mountains, and they will become powerless before his feet.

“And it will come to pass in those days that *none will be saved either by gold or by silver, and none be able to escape*. And there will be no iron for war, nor will one clothe oneself with a breastplate. Bronze will be of no service, and tin will be of no service and will not be esteemed, and lead will not be desired. And *all these things will be denied and destroyed from the surface of the earth when the Elect One will appear before the face of the Lord of Spirits.*”<sup>3</sup>

In other words, all the resources of this world will pass away and will not help anyone escape the Day of Judgment when Jesus comes in his glory to judge the earth.

After saying this, Enoch continued:

“And after this *the Righteous and Elect One will cause the house of his congregation to appear* – from now on *they will be no more hindered* in the name of the Lord of Spirits. And these mountains will not stand as the earth before his righteousness, but the hills will be as a fountain of water, and *the righteous will have rest from the oppression of sinners.*”<sup>4</sup>

Once again, we should note that the word which is translated as *church* in the New Testament is the Greek word ἐκκλησία (*ekklesia*), and it does not mean *church* – it means *assembly* or *congregation*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Matthew 25:31-46

<sup>2</sup> 2 Corinthians 5:10

<sup>3</sup> 1 Enoch 52:6-9

<sup>4</sup> 1 Enoch 53:6-7

In this passage, Enoch said that when Jesus comes, he will cause his congregation (or, in our modern terms, his *church*) to appear. They will no longer be hindered, and they will have rest from all oppression. This is exactly what the New Testament taught us regarding the day when Jesus returns. Compare what Enoch said to what Paul said:

**1 Enoch 53:6-7**

“And after this **the Righteous and Elect One will cause the house of his congregation to appear** – from now on **they will be no more hindered** in the name of the Lord of Spirits... and **the righteous will have rest from the oppression of sinners.**”

**2 Thessalonians 1:6-10**

“God is just. **He will pay back with trials those who inflict trials on you. And he will give rest to you who are suffering trials and to us also when the Lord Jesus is revealed** from heaven with his powerful angels. Then he will punish with blazing fire those who do not know God and who do not obey the Good News about our Lord Jesus... This will happen on the day when he comes to be glorified among his holy people. And all the people who have believed will marvel at Jesus.”

Once again, we can see that Enoch got it right. When Jesus returns, his congregation will appear – he will be glorified among them, and he will give them rest from their enemies who have oppressed them and hindered them.

Next, in the Book of Enoch, God said...

“You mighty kings who dwell on the earth, you will have to behold *mine Elect One, how he sits on the throne of glory and judges Azazel* and all his associates and all his hosts in the name of the Lord of Spirits.”<sup>1</sup>

We mentioned Azazel earlier in this book. He was one of the leaders of the Watchers who descended to earth in Enoch’s time.<sup>2</sup> Among other things, he taught women to use cosmetics and jewelry to make themselves beautiful.<sup>3</sup> It is very possible that this is what caused the rest of the Watchers to then sin when they saw the beauty of those women. This could be why God said about Azazel, “to him ascribe all sin.”<sup>4</sup> Also, in chapter fifty-four, Enoch wrote about the

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 55:4

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 6:7

<sup>3</sup> 1 Enoch 8:1-2

<sup>4</sup> 1 Enoch 10:8



kings and the mighty who joined themselves to Azazel. He said that they would be judged “for their unrighteousness in becoming subject to Satan...”<sup>1</sup>

So, Azazel is a very prominent figure in this story – perhaps Satan himself. Here, in chapter fifty-five, Enoch said that Jesus will sit on the throne of glory and judge Azazel and all his associates. So, Jesus will not only judge humanity, but he will judge Satan and the Watchers as well. This is, again, the same thing taught in the New Testament: Every knee will bow before Jesus – *in heaven*, on earth, and *under the earth* (where Azazel was bound).<sup>2</sup> Then, after judgment, Satan will be bound and thrown into a lake of fire.<sup>3</sup>

So, Enoch not only accurately prophesied that Jesus will be the one to judge the world, but he understood that Jesus would be the one to judge the angels as well.

Later in the book, Enoch said:

“And the Lord of Spirits placed *the Elect One on the throne of glory*. And he will judge all the works of the holy above in the heaven, and in the balance will their deeds be weighed. And when he will lift up his countenance to judge their secret ways according to the word of the name of the Lord of Spirits, and their path according to the way of the righteous judgment of the Lord of Spirits, then will they all with one voice speak and bless, and glorify and extol and sanctify the name of the Lord of Spirits.”<sup>4</sup>

Once again, according to Enoch, Jesus will sit on a throne of glory and judge the earth and the angels.

Enoch continued:

“And so the Lord commanded the kings and the mighty and the exalted, and those who dwell on the earth, and said: ‘Open your eyes and lift up your horns if you are able to recognize *the Elect One*.’ And the Lord of Spirits *seated him on the throne of his glory, and the spirit of righteousness was poured out upon him, and the word of his mouth slays all the sinners, and all the unrighteous are destroyed from before his face*.

“And there will stand up in that day all the kings and the mighty, and the exalted and those who hold the earth, and they will see and recognize how *he sits on the throne of his glory, and righteousness is judged before him, and no lying word is spoken before him*. Then will pain come upon them as on a woman in travail, when her child enters the mouth

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 54:6

<sup>2</sup> Philippians 2:10, 1 Enoch 10:1-8

<sup>3</sup> Revelation 20:10, 1 Enoch 10:6

<sup>4</sup> 1 Enoch 61:8-9

of the womb and she has pain in bringing out. And one portion of them will look on the other, and they will be terrified, and they will be downcast of countenance, and pain will seize them when they see *that Son of Man sitting on the throne of his glory.*

“And the kings and the mighty and all who possess the earth will bless and glorify and extol *him who rules over all, who was hidden.* For *from the beginning the Son of Man was hidden, and the Most High preserved him in the presence of his might and revealed him to the elect. And the congregation of the elect and holy will be sown, and all the elect will stand before him on that day.*

“And all the kings and the mighty and the exalted and those who rule the earth *will fall down before him* on their faces, and worship and *set their hope upon that Son of Man* and petition him and supplicate for mercy at his hands. Nevertheless that Lord of Spirits will so press them that they will have to go out from his presence, and their faces will be filled with shame, and the darkness grow deeper on their faces.

“And he will deliver them to the angels for punishment, to execute vengeance on them because they have oppressed his children and his elect and they will be a spectacle for the righteous and for his elect – they will rejoice over them, because the wrath of the Lord of Spirits rests upon them, and his sword is drunk with their blood.

“*And the righteous and elect will be saved on that day, and they will never again see the face of the sinners and unrighteous. And the Lord of Spirits will abide over them, and with that Son of Man will they eat and lie down and rise up forever and ever. And the righteous and elect will have risen from the earth and ceased to be of downcast countenance. And they will have been clothed with garments of glory, and these will be the garments of life from the Lord of Spirits. And your garments will not grow old, nor your glory pass away before the Lord of Spirits.*”<sup>1</sup>

This is an entire chapter from the Book of Enoch which proclaims what the entire New Testament teaches about Jesus and his coming. Jesus will come, everyone will see him, everyone will recognize who he is, and everyone will fall before him.

The sinners will fall before him and ask for mercy, but he will send them away to their judgment. But as for the righteous – they will be clothed with garments of glory and they will no longer be cast down. They will inherit eternal life and live forever with Jesus.

This passage is extremely accurate as it describes Jesus and how the world will one day see him. There are so many parallels to the

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 62:1-16

New Testament in this passage, we can't touch on them all, but I'll point out a few.

Earlier in this chapter, I quoted this section to show that this parallels what Paul said when he wrote to the Philippians:

**Philippians 2:10-11**

**“Every knee will bow to the name of Jesus – everyone in heaven, on earth, and under the earth. And everyone will confess that Jesus Christ is Lord and bring glory to God the Father.”**

**1 Enoch 62:1-16**

**“...they will see and recognize how he sits on the throne of his glory... Then pain will come upon them... when they see that Son of Man sitting on the throne of his glory. And the kings and the mighty and all who possess the earth will bless and glorify and extol him who rules over all, who was hidden... And all the kings and the mighty and the exalted and those who rule the earth will fall down before him on their faces, and worship and set their hope upon that Son of Man and petition him and supplicate for mercy at his hands...”**

Paul described exactly what Enoch had already said. Every knee will bow before Jesus and every tongue will confess that he is Lord. Even the rich and mighty who rejected him their whole lives will one day recognize him for who he truly is and will fall before him and worship.

Enoch understood and taught that the Anointed King would be the Judge of the world. He understood that the sinners – the rich, the kings, the mighty, and all those who had lived for themselves here on earth – would all fall before Jesus, acknowledging his kingship, and begging him for mercy. But nevertheless, they would receive judgment for their wickedness and be sent away from his presence.

When Paul wrote these things, he wrote the same things Enoch had written long before him. Paul was not teaching a new concept. He was teaching the same thing Enoch had already taught.

These are the sort of verses that help us give an answer to those atheists and others that claim that these ideas were all invented by Christians after the fact. We can see clearly that these concepts and ideas were written long before Christianity. They were written in the Book of Enoch, which predates Jesus and was found in the Dead Sea

Scrolls! This proves that those attacks on Christianity are baseless.

Jesus and the apostles were not the inventors of these ideas, nor were these ideas invented by Christians in later centuries. These concepts were thoroughly based in ancient Jewish writings.

Furthermore, in this passage, there is a parallel to what John wrote in the Book of Revelation:

**Revelation 19:11-21**

“Then I saw heaven opened, and there before me was a white horse. The rider on the horse is called Faithful and True, and with justice he judges and makes war. His eyes are like blazing fire, and on his head are many crowns... **Out of the rider’s mouth comes a sharp sword that he will use to strike down the nations... their armies were killed with the sword that came out of the mouth of the rider on the horse...**”

**1 Enoch 62:2**

“...and **the word of his mouth slays all the sinners**, and all the unrighteous are destroyed from before his face...”

When Jesus returns, he will slay the sinners with the word of his mouth – a sharp sword with which he strikes down the nations. Yet again, Enoch and John both described the same thing.

Additionally, in this chapter in Enoch, we can see yet again that Jesus “was hidden” before the creation of the world.

This is something we have already seen in earlier chapters. Enoch taught explicitly that the coming Messiah – the Anointed One – would be more than just a human. He would be someone who existed before time began – hidden with God since before creation.

In our last chapter, we discussed the importance of the fact that Enoch said Jesus existed before time began. However, there is another facet of this that is also extremely important: Enoch said the Elect One was hidden with God. It is this word *hidden* that is important.

Before creation, God had already created a plan for redemption, for his people, and for his future King. He kept his plan a secret – and only revealed this secret to those who truly knew him. This secret was the gospel – it was God’s secret plan to defeat the powers of darkness.

Throughout the New Testament, the apostles (in particular, Paul) referred to this secret plan of God. They understood that God had

kept Jesus as a secret since before time began. They understood that he had been hidden with God since the creation of the world – the exact same thing Enoch had taught.

When they wrote these things about Jesus, they echoed what had already been written by Enoch thousands of years before Jesus came. They knew these truths about Jesus, and they understood that this was a secret which God had kept hidden since creation. They knew these things because all of these truths could be found in the Book of Enoch.

Compare the Book of Enoch to what was written in the New Testament:

**Romans 16:25**

**“The message about Christ is the secret that was hidden for long ages past but is now revealed.”**

**1 Corinthians 2:7**

**“We speak God’s secret wisdom, which he has kept hidden. Before the world began, God planned this wisdom for our glory.”**

**Ephesians 3:9**

**“And God gave me the work of telling all people about the plan for his secret, which has been hidden by him since the beginning of time. He is the one who created everything. His purpose was that through the church all the rulers and powers in the heavenly realm will now know God’s wisdom... according to the plan God had since the beginning of time, which he accomplished through Christ Jesus our Lord.”**

**Colossians 1:26**

**“This message is the secret that was hidden from everyone since the beginning of time, but now it is made known to God’s holy people.”**

**1 Enoch 48:2-7**

**“And at that hour that Son of Man was named in the presence of the Lord of Spirits... before the sun and the signs were created, before the stars of the heaven were made, his name was named before the Lord of Spirits... he has been chosen and hidden before him, before the creation of the world and forevermore. And the wisdom of the Lord of Spirits has revealed him to the holy and righteous.”**

**1 Enoch 62:6-7**

**“And the kings and the mighty and all who possess the earth will bless and glorify and extol him who rules over all, who was hidden. For from the beginning the Son of Man was hidden, and the Most High preserved him in the presence of his might and revealed him to the elect.”**

Jesus was hidden with God before time began. God had a secret plan that involved Jesus, so he kept Jesus hidden – only revealing him

to the righteous and elect. Enoch told us about this, and Paul then repeated this over and over again throughout his letters. This is not a coincidence. Clearly Paul knew and understood what Enoch was talking about.

Jesus was God's secret. The Watchers seem to have known that Jesus existed (after all, the demons recognized him). But they didn't know what God's plan was. They didn't know his secret. Jesus was hidden with God until the right time. This is what Paul referenced throughout his letters. He was familiar with Enoch's words and understood that Jesus had been hidden before time began.

I've only highlighted a few examples from this chapter in Enoch, but look at that passage above for yourself. Open your eyes and see what the Book of Enoch said about Jesus! These things are identical to what was taught all throughout the New Testament!

In this one chapter alone, Enoch told us that Jesus will sit on the throne of glory, he will judge whether people lived in righteousness, and no one will be able to lie to him. He said Jesus, who was hidden from the beginning of time, will rule over all and establish his congregation – his Church. He said all those who have ruled the earth will fall before him and beg him for mercy. And he said the righteous and elect will be saved on that day and will live forever and ever with Jesus – that Son of Man.

How can we continue to deny that the Book of Enoch is Scripture? This is the clearest prophecy about Jesus that we can find anywhere in any of the ancient Jewish texts. It is more clear than any passage we can find even in our Old Testaments! So, why do we not read it?

As clear as this all is, this is still even more. Enoch continued:

“And there was great joy among them, and they blessed and glorified and extolled because *the name of that Son of Man had been revealed unto them. And he sat on the throne of his glory, and the sum of judgment was given unto the Son of Man, and he caused the sinners to pass away and be destroyed* from off the face of the earth, and those who have led the world astray. With chains will they be bound, and in their assemblage-place of destruction will they be imprisoned, and all their works vanish from the face of the earth.

“And from now on *there will be nothing corruptible, for that Son of Man has appeared and has seated himself on the throne of his glory, and all evil will pass away before his face, and the word of that Son of Man will go out and be*

*strong before the Lord of Spirits.*"<sup>1</sup>

Once again, Enoch wrote an incredible description of the very same things the apostles and Jesus would later teach. Yet, Enoch wrote it first.

In this passage, Enoch described the day Jesus would one day judge the world, and he said the Son of Man would "sit on the throne of his glory."

This is a phrase he had already used numerous times in many of the quotes we have already seen. This is significant because Jesus also used this exact same phrase to describe the exact same event! Compare Enoch to Jesus:

**Matthew 25:31 (MEV)**

"When **the Son of Man comes in his glory**, and all the holy angels with him, then **he will sit on the throne of his glory**. **Before him will be gathered all nations, and he will separate them one from another** as a shepherd separates his sheep from the goats."

**1 Enoch 69:26-29**

"And **[that Son of Man] sat on the throne of his glory, and the sum of judgment was given unto the Son of Man, and he caused the sinners to pass away and be destroyed from off the face of the earth... for that Son of Man has appeared and has seated himself on the throne of his glory**, and all evil will pass away before his face..."

Once again, we can see that Enoch taught a significant truth about Jesus – and he was the one who taught it first. Jesus borrowed Enoch's phrase to help the people understand what he said.

In this section, Enoch also said that when the Son of Man sits upon his throne of glory, from then on "there will be nothing corruptible." The significance of this may go unnoticed to the average reader today, but this statement is extraordinary.

The word *corruptible* is used throughout the Bible.<sup>2</sup> It refers to death and decay. When someone dies, their body decays. In the Bible, this decay is referred to as *corruption*. So, according to Enoch, when Jesus sits upon his throne of glory and judges the earth, there will no longer be death and decay.

Why will there no longer be death and decay? Enoch didn't explicitly say, but the implication can be seen if you read between the lines – Jesus defeated death itself! The only way for a king to bring

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 69:26-29

<sup>2</sup> Psalm 30:9, 55:23; Isaiah 38:17; Acts 13:34-37; 1 Corinthians 15:42, 15:50-54

an end to death is if that king somehow manages to defeat death. Jesus did that!

This shows that the ancient Jewish expectation was that a Messiah would come who had the power to defeat death. Once again, this means they knew the Messiah would be more than a mere human. This points straight at Jesus. Everything he accomplished fulfilled the prophecies of Enoch.

Enoch explained in more detail how Jesus would defeat death – we will look at that in just a moment. But first, before coming to that passage, Enoch said:

“And that Head of Days came with Michael and Gabriel, Raphael and Phanuel, thousands and tens of thousands of angels without number. And he came to me and greeted me with his voice, and said unto me, *‘This is the Son of Man who is born unto righteousness, and righteousness abides over him, and the righteousness of the Head of Days forsakes him not.’* And he said unto me, ‘He proclaims unto you peace in the name of the world to come; for from hence has proceeded peace since the creation of the world, and so will it be unto you forever and forever and ever. And *all will walk in his ways since righteousness never forsakes him. With him will be their dwelling-places, and with him their heritage, and they will not be separated from him forever and ever and ever. And so there will be length of days with that Son of Man, and the righteous will have peace and an upright way in the name of the Lord of Spirits forever and ever.*”<sup>1</sup>

According to Enoch, this *Son of Man* is someone whom righteousness never forsakes, and the righteous will live with him and will never be separated from him. Everyone will walk in his ways – in other words, everyone will walk in righteousness.

Once again, this is a clear picture of Jesus. The New Testament tells us that Jesus lived a righteous life – free from sin.<sup>2</sup> When he returns, his people will live with him and never be separated from him again,<sup>3</sup> and they will all live in righteousness because all sin and evil will be gone forever.<sup>4</sup>

In other words, the New Testament taught the same thing that was already written in the Book of Enoch, once again showing that the Book of Enoch was, at the very least, accurate – if not actually influential on the New Testament.

Finally, in chapter ninety-two, Enoch said:

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 71:13-16

<sup>2</sup> 2 Corinthians 5:21; Hebrews 4:15; 1 John 3:5; 1 Peter 2:22, 3:18

<sup>3</sup> Revelation 7:14-17, 21:1-4, 21:22-27

<sup>4</sup> Revelation 21:27



“Let not your spirit be troubled on account of the times; for the Holy and Great One has appointed days for all things. *And the Righteous One will arise from sleep* – will arise and walk in paths of righteousness, and all his path and conversation will be in eternal goodness and grace. *He will be gracious to the righteous and give him eternal uprightness, and he will give him power so that he will be endowed with goodness and righteousness. And he will walk in eternal light. And sin will perish in darkness forever and will no more be seen from that day forevermore.*”<sup>1</sup>

There are a number of things to note in this passage. The first being this: throughout the whole book, Enoch referred to this coming Messiah as *The Elect One*, *The Anointed One*, *The Son of Man*, and *The Righteous One*. In this passage, he once again referred to him as *The Righteous One*, and he said, “the Righteous One will arise from sleep.”

Why is this so significant?

It is significant because throughout the New Testament, death was referred to as *sleep*.<sup>2</sup> Those who knew about the resurrection understood that death is not permanent – it is nothing more than a form of sleep that we will one day wake up from. Here, Enoch said that the Righteous One himself will arise from sleep.

This goes back to the passage we examined above and explains how the Son of Man was able to bring an end to corruption (death and decay)! The Righteous One arose from sleep! He defeated death!

This is very interesting because there are many places in the New Testament which refer to Jesus’ death and resurrection as something which was prophesied in the Scriptures.<sup>3</sup> According to the apostles in the New Testament, the Scriptures had prophesied that it was necessary for Jesus to die and then rise again. Yet, when we read the Old Testament Scriptures, we don’t really see that prophecy.

There are very few passages in the Old Testament which can be taken to mean that the coming Messiah would have to die and rise from the dead. Even the passages we can find are far from clear. The apostles repeatedly said that this was something Scripture had prophesied, yet it is hard to find what they were talking about.

Where did the Scriptures say this? Why did the apostles talk about Jesus’ death and resurrection as though it were something that had clearly been prophesied? Without the Book of Enoch, it is a bit of a

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 92:2-5

<sup>2</sup> John 11:11-15; Acts 7:60; 1 Corinthians 15:20, 15:51; Ephesians 5:14; 1 Thessalonians 4:13

<sup>3</sup> For example, John 20:8-9

strange statement on their part.

However, if we consider the Book of Enoch as Scripture like Jesus and the apostles did, then it says right here, point blank – the Righteous One will arise from sleep. *Sleep* was what they called death.

Additionally, in this passage, Enoch said that the Righteous One would empower his people with eternal uprightness, goodness, and righteousness. This is the message of the New Testament! However, to recognize this, we must look at what the apostles taught rather than what much of the church today teaches.

Jesus' mission was more than just forgiveness. He came to rescue us from slavery to sin and to empower us with the Holy Spirit. He gives us the Spirit as a new heart, and he makes us into a new creation so we are able to live the way God wants us to live. In other words, he empowers us with eternal uprightness, goodness, and righteousness – just like Enoch prophesied! Consider what the apostles said:

**Romans 6:2-7**

**“We died to sin, so how can we continue living in sin? Don’t you know that all of us who were baptized into Christ participated in his death through that baptism? When we were baptized, we were buried with Christ and participated in his death. So, just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, we also can live a new life... We know that our old person died with Christ on the cross so that our body of sin would have no power over us and we would not be slaves of sin.”**

**Romans 8:2**

**“Through Christ Jesus the power of the Spirit that brings life set you free from the power that brings sin and death.”**

**2 Corinthians 5:15**

**“Christ died for all so that those who live would no longer live for themselves...”**

**Galatians 5:16**

**“Walk by the Spirit. Then you will not do what your flesh wants.”**

**Ephesians 4:23-4**

**“But you were taught to be made new in your hearts, to become the new person. That new person is created according to God – truly good and holy.”**

**Colossians 3:9-10**

**“You have stripped off your old self and its deeds. You have put on the new person, in which you are being made new... according to the image of the one who created you.”**

**Titus 2:14**

**“[Jesus Christ] gave himself for us so he might ransom us from all wickedness and to make us pure people who belong only to him – people who are always eager to do good deeds.”**

**1 Peter 2:24**

“Christ carried our sins in his body on the tree **so we would stop living for sin and start living for righteousness.**”

**1 Enoch 92:4**

**“He will be gracious to the righteous and give him eternal uprightness, and he will give him power so that he will be endowed with goodness and righteousness. And he will walk in eternal light.”**

These are only a few selected verses out of very many. Jesus and the apostles did not teach the same gospel as is widely taught in Christianity today. They taught that Jesus came to set us free from sin and to empower us through the Spirit to live righteously. As the apostles said, Jesus gave himself for us so that we would stop living for ourselves,<sup>1</sup> so that we would stop living for sin,<sup>2</sup> so that we would stop living according to the flesh,<sup>3</sup> and so that we would begin to live for righteousness – doing what is right.<sup>4</sup> If we continue living according to the flesh, then we have not been transformed by the death and resurrection of Jesus!

This true gospel is more than what is preached today. It is more than simply “Jesus paid our debt so we can live forever.” His death and resurrection are not a free pass into Heaven. His death and resurrection were meant to change us so that we would become who God wants us to be – so that we would become truly good and righteous.

Here are a few things many Christians fail to recognize: Scripture says (in both Revelation and Enoch) that the dead will be judged by what they have done, which is written in the books.<sup>5</sup> Jesus said that he will separate the sheep from the goats based on what they have done – their actions, not their beliefs.<sup>6</sup> And the apostles taught that no one who continues in sin will inherit the kingdom of God.<sup>7</sup>

In other words – Scripture does not teach that you get to Heaven by believing the correct information. Scripture teaches that you will be judged by your actions on Judgment Day. This would be problematic for us if not for the fact that Jesus made a way for our hearts to be changed so that our actions also change.

---

<sup>1</sup> 2 Corinthians 5:15

<sup>2</sup> 1 Peter 2:24

<sup>3</sup> Galatians 5:16

<sup>4</sup> Titus 2:14, 1 Peter 2:24

<sup>5</sup> Revelation 20:11-15; 1 Enoch 81:1-4

<sup>6</sup> Matthew 25:31-46

<sup>7</sup> 1 Corinthians 6:9-10; Galatians 5:19-21; Ephesians 5:5; Hebrews 10:26-31

The true gospel is that we die with Jesus and become entirely new people – people who live for him and live for righteousness and eagerly desire to do good deeds! This is all possible because he gives us the Spirit and we become new creations!

This is a lengthy topic we have already written about in our book, *Dead Church*. It is vital that we come to understand the true gospel of Jesus – not the false gospel which tickles our ears and tells us we can be saved without a life of obedience.

However, for the purpose of this book, we should recognize that Enoch prophesied this true gospel. He said that Jesus would give us eternal uprightness and the power to be endowed with goodness and righteousness so that we will walk in eternal light! According to the New Testament, this is exactly what Jesus accomplished! He died and rose from the dead so that we could be born again and he empowered us by giving us his Spirit so we can walk in eternal uprightness, goodness, righteousness and light.

Once again, Enoch was right. Moreover, he connected the dots for us to show how this would all be possible. How did Jesus accomplish this for us? How did he make a way for us to be born again and empower us as new creations? Enoch told us. Right there, in the same paragraph: “The Righteous One will arise from sleep.”

## FINAL THOUGHTS

These are all examples of things that the Book of Enoch told us about Jesus. These were clearly taught by the apostles in the New Testament – yet Enoch wrote those same things long before Jesus ever came.

My goal in this section has been to show my readers how much the Book of Enoch taught exactly what the New Testament taught. The Book of Enoch taught all these things before the New Testament was ever written. So, if we really want to understand the New Testament, then we need to understand that they taught from a book which we do not include in our Bibles.

The evidence overwhelmingly demonstrates that the Book of Enoch belongs in Scripture. There is no other conclusion you can come to when you read it for yourself with a willingness to let go of any human traditions that are proven to be false.

It is time for us to let go of those human traditions. The people who gave us those traditions also told us that there is no evidence

that the apostles considered any other books to be Scripture. You can see for yourself that this was a blatant lie.

The apostles quoted the Book of Enoch. They taught from it. They learned from it. They used it heavily in everything they wrote. The Book of Enoch was extremely influential on everything they believed.

It not only taught principles we should live by, but it proclaimed Jesus and his coming kingdom. The apostles echoed what Enoch wrote as they taught the early Church who Jesus is. Their words and descriptions are too similar to Enoch's for it to be a mere coincidence. They clearly knew the Book of Enoch and were well aware that they taught truths about Jesus from this book.

Moreover, if the New Testament was truly breathed out by God – inspired by the Holy Spirit – then even God himself taught from the Book of Enoch and allowed it to flow through the writings of the New Testament.

If Jesus, the apostles, and the Holy Spirit all considered the Book of Enoch to be authoritative and true, then so should we. They should be our source of knowledge as we try to understand what is true and what is not. We should not turn to traditions, scholars, or church leaders to give us our truth. We should look to Jesus and his apostles. We know they were trustworthy sources, and we don't know about anyone else.

Believe it or not, there are still many parallels between the Book of Enoch and the New Testament that we have not covered. In fact, every time I read the Book of Enoch, I still find something I hadn't noticed before. Enoch's fingerprints are found all across the New Testament. His book helps us understand what the apostles and Jesus taught.

But don't take my word for it – go look at it for yourself.

# EIGHT

## **So, What's the Book of Enoch All About?**

**I**n the first two sections of this book, we have evaluated how the Book of Enoch is reflected throughout the New Testament. In doing so, we have seen that Jesus and the apostles often quoted, referenced, taught from, or in some other way confirmed the Book of Enoch. This alone is enough for us to recognize that the Book of Enoch is true Scripture. If Jesus and the apostles considered this book to be Scripture, then we should as well.

However, there is still another argument for us to make. If the Book of Enoch is truly Scripture, then the story told within that book must be a true story. If it is Scripture, then the history it gives must be real history – it must tell us about something that has actually

occurred.

This is where things get a little strange. The Book of Enoch doesn't tell us any old run-of-the-mill story. It doesn't tell us a story that easily fits the history most of us have been raised to believe. No, it tells us a vastly different version of history than what most people are taught. It tells a story that most people would immediately and easily dismiss as fantasy and fiction. Yet Jesus and the apostles considered it truthful and authoritative.

How is this possible? How can we reconcile the story told in the Book of Enoch with the rest of history?

Throughout the next few chapters, we will demonstrate that the story as told by Enoch fits perfectly into the history of our world. There is an abundance of evidence found throughout the ancient cultures of the world as well as the archaeological record which all corroborate the Book of Enoch and prove its historical validity.

In other words, the ancient cultures of the world, who lived much closer to the times of these events, all tell the same story as Enoch. Though it seems like fanciful fiction to us, this is only a result of our modern worldview. Those who lived long ago all agreed that the events Enoch described really did happen. Furthermore, there is still an abundance of evidence still available to us today within the archaeological record which corroborate Enoch's story and prove that it is true.

The aim of this next section is to provide a small fraction of this evidence – just enough to show that there is more than meets the eye when it comes to our ancient past, and just enough to whet your appetite for these things so you can go look into it for yourself.

However, before we can begin, we must first establish the story as told by the Book of Enoch. After all, in order to prove that other cultures told the same stories, and that there is still archaeological evidence to back up those stories, we must first know what those stories are.

## THE EVENTS DESCRIBED BY ENOCH

To start, let's go over a brief summary of the entire story as told by Enoch. Then, after this, we will break it down into each individual segment and look at the specifics of what Enoch said.

To summarize, the Book of Enoch tells us the story of how some angels in heaven, who are called Watchers, looked down from heaven

and saw that human women were beautiful. These Watchers then came down to earth, took wives for themselves from among humanity, they had children with those women, those children grew up to be giants, and the Watchers taught those women and their children all sorts of secret things that humanity was never supposed to know.

This secret knowledge led to a vast amount of corruption and evil as humanity and the giants began to pursue that knowledge. As time went on, they quickly began to consume all the resources of the earth until it became unsustainable. When those resources began to run out, the giants began to devour mankind as they ran out of food.

So, this was a horrible time to live. Everyone was chasing the knowledge the Watchers had provided, and as a result, the earth was destroyed.

Ultimately, God judged the Watchers and their children. He ordered some of his angels to stir up a war among the giants to get them to all fight one another until they all killed each other. And he ordered that the Watchers be bound and forced to witness their children all kill each other. Afterwards, the Watchers were imprisoned to await final judgment.

As you can see, this is a weird story. It wouldn't be that big of a deal if we were to simply say it is fictional mythology. But we're not saying that. We're saying this book is Scripture, which makes this story true. That is a big pill to swallow, which is why we have included this entire section of our book.

Listed below is a brief outline of Enoch's story. We will use this as a reference throughout this chapter as we show each of these elements within the Book of Enoch.

- Angels (the Watchers) came down from Heaven and married human women
- The Watchers had children with those women, and those children were giants
- The Watchers taught secret knowledge that mankind was not supposed to know
- They consumed resources and caused oppression, corruption, and destruction
- God caused the giants to kill each other in a cataclysmic war



- God made the Watchers watch their children kill each other, and then locked them up for judgment

## THE WATCHERS MARRIED WOMEN AND TAUGHT MANKIND KNOWLEDGE

To begin, we will look at various passages throughout the Book of Enoch which tell us about the Watchers who descended to earth, married human women, and taught mankind all sorts of secret knowledge...

Angels (the Watchers) came down from Heaven and married human women

### **1 Enoch 6:1-6**

“And it came to pass when the children of men had multiplied that in those days were born unto them beautiful and comely daughters. **And the angels, the children of the heaven, saw and lusted after them, and said to one another: ‘Come, let us choose us wives from among the children of men and beget us children.’** And Semjaza, who was their leader, said unto them: ‘I fear you will not indeed agree to do this deed, and I alone will have to pay the penalty of a great sin.’ And they all answered him and said: ‘Let us all swear an oath, and all bind ourselves by mutual imprecations not to abandon this plan but to do this thing.’ Then swore they all together and bound themselves by mutual imprecations upon it. **And they were in all two hundred who descended in the days of Jared on the summit of Mount Hermon,** and they called it Mount Hermon, because they had sworn and bound themselves by mutual imprecations upon it.”

After this, Enoch proceeded to list out the names of the leaders of the Watchers. There were twenty leaders total, each was a leader over ten Watchers. So – two hundred Watchers came to earth and swore an oath on Mt. Hermon that they would take wives for themselves and have children. After listing out the leaders, Enoch continued:

Angels (the Watchers) came down from Heaven and married human women

The Watchers taught secret knowledge that mankind was not supposed to know

**1 Enoch 7:1**

“And all the others together with them took unto themselves wives, and each chose for himself one, and they began to go in unto them and to defile themselves with them, and they taught them charms and enchantments, and the cutting of roots, and made them acquainted with plants.”

We can see here that Enoch began to touch on the fact that the Watchers taught mankind how to do certain things – charms, enchantments, the cutting of roots, and general information about plants. If we skip ahead a few verses, Enoch continued explaining what the Watchers taught. He mentioned a number of Watchers by name:

The Watchers taught secret knowledge that mankind was not supposed to know

**1 Enoch 8:1-3**

“And Azazel taught men to make swords, and knives, and shields, and breastplates, and made known to them the metals of the earth and the art of working them, and bracelets, and ornaments, and the use of antimony, and the beautifying of the eyelids, and all kinds of costly stones, and all coloring tinctures. And there arose much godlessness, and they committed fornication, and they were led astray, and became corrupt in all their ways. Semjaza taught enchantments, and root-cuttings, Armaros the resolving of enchantments, Baraqijal taught astrology, Kokabel the constellations, Ezeqeel the knowledge of the clouds, Araquel the signs of the earth, Shamsiel the signs of the sun, and Sariel the course of the moon. And as men perished, they cried, and their cry went up to heaven.”

Later, in chapter nine, some of the good angels – Michael, Gabriel, Raphael, and Uriel – went to God and began to talk about all these things that the Watchers had done. They said:

Angels (the Watchers) came down from Heaven and married human women

The Watchers taught secret knowledge that mankind was not supposed to know

**1 Enoch 9:6-8**

“You see what Azazel has done, who has taught all unrighteousness on earth and revealed the eternal secrets which were preserved in heaven, which men were striving to learn. And Semjaza, to whom you have given authority to bear rule over his associates. And they have gone to the daughters of men upon the earth, and have slept with the women, and have defiled themselves, and revealed to them all kinds of sins.”

When Gabriel, Michael, Raphael, and Uriel came to God, they asked him what he wanted them to do in response to what the Watchers had done. God then issued orders for how the fallen Watchers were to be judged. We will come back to this later in this chapter. However, while issuing judgment, God reiterated that the Watchers had taught things to mankind that they were not supposed to know:

The Watchers taught secret knowledge that mankind was not supposed to know

**1 Enoch 10:7-8**

“Heal the earth which the angels have corrupted, and proclaim the healing of the earth, that they may heal the plague, and that all the children of men may not perish through all the secret things that the Watchers have disclosed and have taught their sons. And the whole earth has been corrupted through the works that were taught by Azazel: to him ascribe all sin.”

In chapter twelve, God sent Enoch to the Watchers with a message, in which he reiterated that the Watchers had left their proper dwelling place and had defiled themselves with women:

Angels (the Watchers) came down from Heaven and married human women

**1 Enoch 12:4**

“Enoch, you scribe of righteousness, go, declare to the Watchers of the heaven who have left the high heaven, the holy eternal place, and have defiled themselves with women, and have done as the

children of earth do, and have taken unto themselves wives...”

God also reiterated that the Watchers had taken secrets from heaven and taught them to mankind:

The Watchers taught secret knowledge that mankind was not supposed to know

**1 Enoch 16:2-4**

“And now as to the Watchers who have sent you to intercede for them, who had been previously in heaven, say to them: ‘You have been in heaven, but **all the mysteries had not yet been revealed to you, and you knew worthless ones, and these in the hardness of your hearts you have made known to the women, and through these mysteries women and men work much evil on earth.**’ Say to them therefore: ‘You have no peace.’”

In this passage, we can see an interesting piece of information – God said that the secrets which the Watchers taught were actually worthless secrets. The Watchers did not yet know the true secrets of heaven.

What are the true secrets of heaven? That’s a good question. Enoch didn’t say. All we know from this is that the Watchers didn’t know the true secrets either. They thought they had wonderful and powerful knowledge, but God didn’t see it the same way. He knew that the secrets they stole from heaven and gave to mankind weren’t even good information. They were worthless secrets.

In other words – the things that the Watchers taught mankind – things that have since corrupted humanity and have corrupted the course of human history – these secrets were not even valuable. The Watchers barely knew anything, yet they took what little they knew and gave that knowledge to mankind which caused a ton of destruction.

This is very interesting because, as we will see in subsequent chapters, the information the Watchers gave mankind was so highly advanced that humanity began to regard the Watchers as their gods. The secrets taught by the Watchers have been held in high regard throughout human history and have led to many great advancements and achievements. Yet God said those secrets were worthless, and that the Watchers didn’t yet know the true secrets of heaven.

Paul wrote to the Corinthians: “We speak God’s secret wisdom, which he has kept hidden. Before the world began, God planned this

wisdom for our glory. None of the rulers of this world understood it. If they had, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory. But as it is written in the Scriptures: 'No eye has ever seen this, and no ear has ever heard about it. No human heart has ever imagined what God has prepared for those who love him.'"<sup>1</sup>

God has secret wisdom – secret knowledge – which he has kept hidden since before the world began. According to Paul, none of the rulers of this world understood God's secret wisdom. Paul often referred to the spiritual powers of darkness (the fallen angels and the demons) as the rulers and principalities of this world. In other words, Paul said the same thing Enoch said – the evil spiritual beings didn't know God's true secrets. They only knew worthless secrets. God's true secrets were things that no eye had seen and no ear had heard.

The Watchers had been entrusted with certain secrets in heaven – knowledge which was so advanced it could change the world. They betrayed God and taught those secrets to humanity. When they did so, they changed the course of human history because mankind became capable of doing things that God never intended for them to do. It brought about many advancements and a vast array of knowledge.

This information has shaped the course of human history as men have continued to pursue that knowledge. The Watchers were worshiped as gods because of the great wealth of information they shared with mankind. Their knowledge allowed mankind to accomplish great things. Yet despite all of this, God informed the Watchers that their secrets were actually worthless. He hadn't allowed them to know the true secrets of heaven. The true secrets of heaven have been kept hidden – planned for our glory.

Later in the Book of Enoch, he explained that men would be judged if they chose to pursue the secrets which were taught by the Watchers:

The Watchers taught secret knowledge that mankind was not supposed to know

**1 Enoch 65:6-11**

“A command has gone out from the presence of the Lord concerning those who dwell on the earth that their ruin is accomplished because **they have learnt all the secrets of the angels, and all the violence of the devils, and all their powers - the most secret ones - and all the power of those who practice sorcery, and the power of witchcraft, and the power of those who make molten images for the whole earth. And how silver is produced from the dust of the earth, and how**

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Corinthians 2:7-9

soft metal originates in the earth... Because of their unrighteousness their judgment has been determined upon and will not be withheld by me forever. **Because of the sorceries which they have searched out and learnt**, the earth and those who dwell upon it will be destroyed. And these - they have no place of repentance forever, **because they have shown them what was hidden**, and they are the damned.”

Then, in chapter 69, Enoch continued to describe in detail the secrets that had been taught by various Watchers:

Angels (the Watchers) came down from Heaven and married human women

The Watchers taught secret knowledge that mankind was not supposed to know

**1 Enoch 69:3-12**

“These are the chiefs of their angels and their names, and their chief ones over hundreds and over fifties and over tens.

“The name of the first **Jeqon: that is, the one who led astray all the sons of God, and brought them down to the earth, and led them astray through the daughters of men.**

“And the second was named **Asbeel: he imparted to the holy sons of God evil counsel and led them astray so that they defiled their bodies with the daughters of men.**

“And the third was named **Gadreel: he it is who showed the children of men all the blows of death, and he led astray Eve, and showed the weapons of death to the sons of men – the shield and the coat of mail, and the sword for battle, and all the weapons of death to the children of men.** And from his hand they have proceeded against those who dwell on the earth from that day and forevermore.

“And the fourth was named **Penemue: he taught the children of men the bitter and the sweet, and he taught them all the secrets of their wisdom. And he instructed mankind in writing with ink and paper, and thereby many sinned from eternity to eternity and until this day.** For men were not created for such a purpose, to give confirmation to their good faith with pen and ink. For men were created exactly like the angels, to the intent that they should continue pure and righteous, and death, which destroys everything, could not have taken hold of them, but through this their knowledge they are perishing, and through this power it is consuming me.

“And the fifth was named **Kasdeja: this is he who showed the children of men all the wicked smiting of spirits and demons, and the smiting of the embryo in the womb, that it may pass away, and the smiting of the soul, the bites of the serpent, and the smiting which befall through the noontide**

| **heat**, the son of the serpent named 'Taba'et."

So, as we can see, the Book of Enoch tells us a story about angels who came down from heaven, married women, and taught mankind all sorts of secret information – how to make weapons, cosmetics, and jewelry, how to work metal, how to write with ink and paper, how to kill in various ways, how to work with various plants, how to perform magic, sciences like astronomy and meteorology, and many other things.

These were all practical skills and knowledge taught to humanity by the Watchers. These things led to corruption and unrighteousness throughout the earth.

This is all a huge part of the story which is reflected in other cultures throughout the world as well as in the archaeological evidence available to us today. As we will see in subsequent chapters, the evidence from history and archaeology points to an event which occurred in the ancient past in which “the gods” taught mankind all sorts of information and technology which allowed them to accomplish great achievements.

## THERE WERE GIANTS ON THE EARTH

The next part of Enoch's story has to do with giants. When the Watchers married human women, they had children with those women. Those children grew up to be giants. This is, again, something that can be proven through the historical and archaeological record. But first, we should familiarize ourselves with what Enoch wrote.

Enoch not only wrote about giants, but he described how those giants consumed the resources of the earth, causing oppression, corruption, and destruction. Here are a few of the things Enoch wrote about these giant children of the Watchers:

The Watchers had children with those women, and those children were giants

They consumed resources and caused oppression, corruption, and destruction

**1 Enoch 7:2-5**

“And they became pregnant, and **they bare great giants, whose height was three thousand ells, who consumed all the acquisitions of men. And when men could no longer sustain them, the giants turned against them and devoured mankind. And they began to sin against birds, and beasts, and reptiles, and fish, and to devour one another’s flesh, and drink the blood.**”

**1 Enoch 9:9**

“And **the women have borne giants, and the whole earth has thereby been filled with blood and unrighteousness.**”

**1 Enoch 15:3**

“Why have you left the high, holy, and eternal heaven, and lain with women, and defiled yourselves with the daughters of men and taken to yourselves wives, and done like the children of earth, **and begotten giants as your sons?**”

According to the Book of Enoch, the Watchers left heaven, married women, and had children with those women. Those children were giants.

Anyone who has read the Old Testament should be familiar with the stories told throughout the Old Testament of giants. The giants were mentioned in Genesis 6, where they were called the *Nephilim*.<sup>1</sup> They were mentioned again when the Israelites approached the Promised Land where giants lived in the land of Canaan.<sup>2</sup> The most famous giant, Goliath, was defeated by David.<sup>3</sup> There are also numerous other mentions of giants throughout the Old Testament.<sup>4</sup>

The Bible describes giants on numerous occasions, but never tells us where they came from! Why? Because the Book of Enoch already explained the origin of the giants. Everyone in ancient Israel was aware of the Book of Enoch. They knew who the giants were. Once again, the only reason Christians don’t know these things is because Christians don’t have or read the Book of Enoch.

According to Enoch, the giants were as large as they were because they were not human – they were part human, and part Watcher.

<sup>1</sup> Genesis 6:4

<sup>2</sup> Numbers 13:28-33; Deuteronomy 1:19-36

<sup>3</sup> 1 Samuel 17

<sup>4</sup> For example: 2 Samuel 21:16-22; 1 Chronicles 11:23; 20:4-8; Deuteronomy 2:10-20; 3:11; 9:2; Amos 2:9



They were an abomination – a mixing of species that was never supposed to occur.

More than this, the giants were destructive. They oppressed and killed humans. They consumed resources, and when those resources began to run out, they began to devour mankind and animals for food and they drank blood.

As we will see in the next few chapters, this strange history of giants is not isolated to the Book of Enoch and the Old Testament. It is confirmed both by the ancient cultures of the world as well as countless archaeological finds. Giants did in fact once walk the earth. There is an abundance of evidence to prove the truth of Enoch's story.

However, before we can review that evidence, there is more to Enoch's story...

## GOD'S JUDGMENT ON THE WATCHERS

Eventually, after the Watchers had caused all this destruction, God issued a judgment against them and their children, the giants. He ordered that the Watchers be bound in darkness to await Judgment Day. However, first, they were forced to watch their children (the giants) all slaughter each other in war.

This is exactly what ended up happening. The giants who had consumed the resources of the earth all began to fight one another. They fought a cataclysmic war which reeked massive destruction and they wiped each other out. Then, after watching their children slaughter each other, the Watchers were imprisoned to await final judgment at the end of time...

God caused the giants to kill each other in a cataclysmic war

God made the Watchers watch their children kill each other, and then locked them up for judgment

### **1 Enoch 10:4-16**

“The Lord said to Raphael: **‘Bind Azazel hand and foot and cast him into the darkness, and make an opening in the desert, which is in Dudael, and cast him therein. And place upon him rough and jagged rocks, and cover him with darkness, and let him abide there forever, and cover his face that he may not see light. And on the day of the great judgment he will be cast into the fire.** And heal the earth which the angels have corrupted, and proclaim the healing of the earth, that they may heal the plague, and that all the children of men may not perish through all the secret things that the Watchers have disclosed and have taught their sons. And the whole earth has been corrupted through the works that were taught by Azazel: to him ascribe all sin.’

God caused the giants to kill each other in a cataclysmic war

God made the Watchers watch their children kill each other, and then locked them up for judgment

“And to Gabriel said the Lord: **‘Proceed against the bastards and the reprobates, and against the children of fornication, and destroy the children of fornication and the children of the Watchers from among men, and cause them to go out - send them one against the other that they may destroy each other in battle;** for length of days will they not have. And no request that they, their fathers, make of you will be granted unto their fathers on their behalf; for they hope to live an eternal life, and that each one of them will live five hundred years.’

“And the Lord said unto Michael: **‘Go, bind Semjaza and his associates who have united themselves with women so as to have defiled themselves with them in all their uncleanness. And when their sons have slain one another, and they have seen the destruction of their beloved ones, bind them fast for seventy generations in the valleys of the earth, until the day of their judgment and of their consummation, until the judgment that is for ever and ever is consummated. In those days they will be led off to the abyss of fire, and to the torment and the prison in which they will be confined forever.** And whosoever will be condemned and destroyed will from then on be bound together with them to the end of all generations. **And destroy all the spirits of the reprobate and the children of the Watchers,** because they have wronged mankind. Destroy all wrong from the face of the earth and let every evil work come to an end.”

So, in this section, God said that the Watchers should be bound up and held in darkness to await judgment. However, before this, Gabriel was to stir up the giants against one another to cause them to fight a war with each other and destroy each other in battle. Then, after the Watchers had seen their sons slay one another, they themselves would be taken away to their imprisonment.

God declared again in chapter twelve:

God caused the giants to kill each other in a cataclysmic war

God made the Watchers watch their children kill each other, and then locked them up for judgment

**1 Enoch 12:4-6**

“Enoch, you scribe of righteousness, go, declare to the Watchers of the heaven who have left the high heaven, the holy eternal place, and have defiled themselves with women, and have done as the children of earth do, and have taken unto themselves wives: “You have wrought great destruction on the earth; and you will have no peace nor forgiveness of sin; and **inasmuch as they delight themselves in their children, the murder of their beloved ones will they see, and over the destruction of their children will they lament,** and will make supplication unto eternity, but mercy and peace will you not attain.”

In chapters thirteen and fourteen, Enoch delivered a message from God to Azazel and another message to the rest of the Watchers:

God caused  
the giants to  
kill each other  
in a  
cataclysmic  
war

God made the  
Watchers  
watch their  
children kill  
each other,  
and then  
locked them  
up for  
judgment

**1 Enoch 13:1-2**

“Enoch went and said: ‘Azazel, you will have no peace. **A severe sentence has gone out against you to put you in bonds, and you will not have toleration nor request granted to you,** because of the unrighteousness which you have taught, and because of all the works of godlessness and unrighteousness and sin which you have shown to men.”

**1 Enoch 14:4-7**

“Your petition will not be granted unto you throughout all the days of eternity, and **that judgment has been finally passed upon you; yea your petition will not be granted unto you. And from now on you will not ascend into heaven unto all eternity, and in bonds of the earth the decree has gone out to bind you for all the days of the world. And that previously you will have seen the destruction of your beloved sons and you will have no pleasure in them, but they will fall before you by the sword.** And your petition on their behalf will not be granted, nor yet on your own, even though you weep and pray and speak all the words contained in the writing which I have written.”

So, once again we can see that the punishment the Watchers received. They were forced to watch the destruction of their children as their kids all slaughtered one another. Then, they would be bound up in chains and held in darkness within the earth.

As Enoch continued, he explained what would happen to the spirits of the giants after they died. He wrote:

“And now, the giants, who are produced from the spirits and flesh, will be called evil spirits upon the earth, and on the earth will be their dwelling. Evil spirits have proceeded from their bodies because they are born from men and from the holy Watchers is their beginning and primal origin. They will be evil spirits on earth, and evil spirits will they be called. As for the spirits of heaven, in heaven will be their dwelling, but as for the spirits of the earth which were born upon the earth, on the earth will be their dwelling. And the spirits of the giants afflict, oppress, destroy, attack, do battle, and work destruction on the earth, and cause trouble. They take no food, but nevertheless hunger and thirst and cause offences. And these spirits will rise up against the children of men and against the women,

because they have proceeded from them.”<sup>1</sup>

The giants were part human, so they didn’t belong in heaven. But they were also part angel (*spirit* in this passage), so they didn’t belong on earth in the flesh. As a result, when they died, they had nowhere to go. They became evil spirits upon the earth which began to cause many problems for people – oppressing them, attacking them, fighting against them, and causing trouble. In the Hermeneia translation,<sup>2</sup> which is generally a more accurate translation, it also states that these evil spirits cause illnesses.

This section is very interesting because throughout the New Testament, we can see countless stories where Jesus or the apostles cast out demons. These demons were often referred to as *unclean spirits*, and they did the very things described in this section of Enoch: they oppressed people, attacked people, caused trouble, and caused illness.

The church today typically teaches (or assumes) that demons are fallen angels. But that is never stated in Scripture. It’s a man-made idea. The Book of Enoch tells us what demons really are – they are the spirits of the giants. They have nowhere else to go, so they roam the earth. Christians today don’t know what demons are because they don’t read all of Scripture.

Yet again, this provides context that cannot be found anywhere else in the Bible. Why did the Bible never explain who or what demons are? Because the Book of Enoch already told us. The only reason we don’t know what demons are is because the Book of Enoch was removed from Scripture by men.

As we continue through the Book of Enoch, we can read more about God’s judgment on the Watchers:

God made the  
Watchers  
watch their  
children kill  
each other,  
and then  
locked them  
up for  
judgment

**1 Enoch 67:4,6-7**

“And he will imprison those angels, who have shown unrighteousness, in that burning valley... that valley of the angels who had led astray mankind burned beneath that land. And through its valleys proceed streams of fire, where these angels are punished who had led astray those who dwell upon the earth.”

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 15:8-12

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch: The Hermeneia Translation, George W.E. Nickelsburg and James C. VanderKam, Fortress Press, 2012

After this, in chapter sixty-eight, Michael (one of the highest-ranking good angels) spoke with the angel Raphael about the judgment that had been decreed over the Watchers:

God made the  
Watchers  
watch their  
children kill  
each other,  
and then  
locked them  
up for  
judgment

**1 Enoch 68:2-5**

“The power of the spirit transports and makes me to tremble because of the severity of **the judgment of the secrets, the judgment of the angels. Who can endure the severe judgment which has been executed, and before which they melt away?** ...Who is he whose heart is not softened concerning it, and whose reins are not troubled by this word of judgment that has gone out upon them because of those who have so led them out?’ And it came to pass when he stood before the Lord of Spirits, Michael said this to Raphael: ‘I will not take their part under the eye of the Lord; for the Lord of Spirits has been angry with them because they do as if they were the Lord. **Therefore all that is hidden will come upon them forever and ever; for neither angel nor man will have his portion in it, but alone they have received their judgment forever and ever.**”

What is interesting about this part of the story is that Michael was an extremely powerful angel. When God first issued judgments against the Watchers, he told Raphael to bind up Azazel, he told Gabriel to stir up the giants to fight one another, and then he told Michael to bind all of the remaining Watchers – all two hundred of them!<sup>1</sup> Michael alone took care of them all.

So, Michael is an extremely powerful angel. He is one of the four living creatures John mentioned in the Book of Revelation (as we saw in an earlier chapter). Yet, despite how powerful and mighty he is, when he saw the judgment that God had decreed over the Watchers, he was terrified. He literally began to shake because their judgment was so severe.

This was no small judgment the Watchers received. They watched their children slaughter one another – something any parent can verify would be a horrific experience. Then they themselves were bound in darkness for what would be thousands of years, only to then be led away to a judgment of fire.

It's understandable why this would make Michael tremble. He

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 10:4-8; 10:11-16

knew this same judgment would await him if he or any other angels were to ever do what the Watchers had done.

## DID THIS REALLY ALL HAPPEN?

So, the Book of Enoch tells us the story of what occurred in the world prior to the flood. As strange as it seems, it is a true and historical account of what has actually happened on earth in the ancient past.

Long ago, angels came to earth from heaven. They married among humanity and had children who grew up to be giants. They lived with the giants on earth, teaching mankind all sorts of knowledge and information, all the while consuming the resources of the earth.

This was not a quick event either. It appears to have continued for around five hundred years because in chapter ten, Enoch said that the Watchers had wanted their children to live forever, but that their lives would be cut short at five hundred years.<sup>1</sup>

So, for around five hundred years, angels and giants lived on the earth, building their own civilization, consuming everything, and teaching mankind advanced knowledge that they were never supposed to know. This is significant. Five hundred years is a long time. Consider how much our world has changed in the last five hundred years.

Five hundred years ago, Europe was in the middle of the Renaissance. Just like the time of the Watchers, people began to learn new information. Knowledge began to spread. But imagine what the last five hundred years would have looked like if all that knowledge and information had been provided all at once by beings from heaven.

For those living in Enoch's time, that knowledge and advancement was given to them by the Watchers. The Watchers understood how the world works better than the smartest scientists today. They came to earth and taught mankind that information practically overnight. And they continued to teach mankind for nearly five hundred years. Imagine what else people back then might have known that we still do not know today.

This time period culminated with a cataclysmic war in which the giants all wiped each other out. The Watchers were forced to do

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 10:10

nothing and witness as the giants slaughtered each other in what could only have been an extremely destructive war. Then, once the war was over, the Watchers were bound in darkness to await final judgment.

As crazy as this may seem, this is history! This actually happened! If it didn't happen, then the Book of Enoch cannot be Scripture – which the New Testament undeniably confirms that it is.

If this is true history, there must be evidence to confirm it. These events are too big to have left no evidence behind! Sure enough, the evidence for this story is abundant. Throughout the next few chapters, we will look at that evidence.

That evidence can be found in a few forms:

First – it can be found in the stories told by other ancient cultures of the world. If these events really occurred, then other cultures would have been talking about it as well. When we look through their stories, we can see that this is true – they all told the same general story as the Book of Enoch. The only difference is that they worshiped the Watchers who had provided mankind with all this knowledge, so they told the stories from a very different perspective. However, fundamentally, the stories are the same.

Second – there is physical evidence. There are fossils, bones, and ruins that confirm this story. There is evidence that someone on earth once possessed knowledge and capabilities that even surpass what we can accomplish today in the modern world. And the evidence shows that that knowledge did not develop over time, but seems to have come all at once.

In the next few chapters, we will look at this evidence. If the Book of Enoch is truly Scripture, then it must be a true story. This evidence confirms that it is.

# NINE

## **The True History of the World According to the Ancients**

**W**e have already shown that the New Testament corroborates the Book of Enoch. Jesus and the apostles used it to teach the early Christians. It informed them about vital truths which they explained to others. They treated the Book of Enoch the same as the rest of the Old Testament – as true Scripture given to us by God through the Holy Spirit.

Yet, as we have seen, the Book of Enoch is a very strange story. It is easy to dismiss the Book of Enoch as fiction.

Even if we accept it as Scripture, it is easy for us to compartmentalize reality. Many Christians even do this with the stories that are in the Bible. They believe that God parted the Red



Sea, that there was a worldwide flood, that Elijah called down fire from heaven, and that Jesus rose from the dead – but subtly, deep down, they don't truly recognize it as history. It becomes disconnected from reality. They believe it is true because it is the Bible, but it also kind of feels like a fairytale because it is so different from what we experience today, and so different from what we have been taught about reality.

The strangeness in these stories makes it easy to dismiss it as fiction. And, when dealing with an unfamiliar story, like the Book of Enoch, it can easily cause us to reject it.

Did angels really come down to earth and marry women? Did they really have children who grew up to be giants? Did they really teach mankind all sorts of secret and advanced knowledge? Was there really a war fought by giants on the earth? Is this really history? Or is this fantasy?

This strange story sounds like a fairytale to us. It is hard to accept as reality. It is easy to dismiss because it is weird. This is why it is important to look at the evidence. The only reason this story seems like fiction to us is because in the very recent past, we have been given a different version of history than what the ancients used to accept as reality.

The story told by Enoch was not weird in the ancient world. All of the other cultures of the world said the same thing. They all agreed that this general story had actually occurred in the past. They lived much closer to the time of the events, and they all stood in agreement – this actually happened.

For us, when we look at history, we see it as a relatively linear progression in which we have come from cavemen and advanced over time to where we are today in this technological age. But this is not the version of history that was taught by those of the ancient world. In fact, this is not the version of history that was known throughout the world until very recently.

But this version of history has influenced us. It causes us to read a story like the Book of Enoch and reject it as fiction because it is so strange and so contrary to what we've been taught.

In this chapter, we want to show that this story was not weird in the ancient past. The ancient world all agreed that this is a true story.

Why is this important? It is important because if the Book of Enoch is fiction, we would only expect to see the story told by a relatively small number of people and cultures. It is an ancient Jewish book, therefore, if it is fiction, we would expect the story to be

isolated to the ancient Jewish culture. This would mean other cultures would not tell the same story. However – if it is a true historical story, then we would expect other cultures to relate the same history. We would expect that other nations and people groups around the world would have similar stories in their history which match what Enoch said.

Therefore, if we see those same stories told in other cultures, then it is evidence pointing to the fact that this story, as strange as it seems to us, is true. This is vital if the Book of Enoch is truly Scripture. Scripture doesn't lie. So, if the Book of Enoch is Scripture, then this evidence from other cultures must exist. And if it does not exist, then the Book of Enoch might not be true, which would mean it might not be Scripture.

We can put the rest of the Bible to this same test. Egypt has stories of various plagues and destruction which occurred around the time of the Exodus. Numerous other cultures around the world wrote about a time when the sun stood still in the sky (just as occurred in the Book of Joshua). Every ancient culture has a flood story. These stories from other cultures demonstrate the validity of the biblical stories. If the Book of Enoch is also Scripture, we should expect to see something similar in regard to it as well.

## ANCIENT ALIENS?

Before we begin, it is worth mentioning that there are others out there who talk about Enoch's story. They often (though not always) fall into the category of the “ancient astronaut theorists”.

In other words – they believe that these stories about the Watchers from Enoch and other cultures refer to aliens. They believe that aliens came to earth in the distant past, interfered in the development of mankind, and taught mankind all sorts of advanced knowledge and information. They are famous (or, perhaps infamous) for the *Ancient Aliens* show on the *History Channel*.

We will look at a number of their arguments. They raise very good arguments and questions as they evaluate history. Quite frankly, they are some of the only people who actually research any of this, so we are forced to use their research in our own evaluation. They point out very real evidence – both from archaeology and ancient mythology – which confirms the story as told by the Book of Enoch.

They see these stories from Enoch and other cultures as true –

but they come to the wrong conclusions. They conclude that these beings were aliens from another planet. I do not come to the same conclusion.

We have already seen that the Book of Enoch is corroborated by the New Testament. It was called *Prophecy*, and it was called *Scripture*. This means that the Book of Enoch is not just another mythological book. It is the true version of history. When we see evidence from other cultures which corroborate the Book of Enoch, we should assume that the Book of Enoch gives the correct perspective.

The Book of Enoch doesn't tell us that aliens came to earth. It tells us that angelic beings from heaven came to earth. The ancient non-Judean cultures of the world assumed these beings were gods. Modern people assume these beings were aliens. Enoch tells us who they really were. They were the Watchers – the fallen angels.

Those who consider these beings as aliens generally consider these beings as benevolent and helpful to mankind. This is exactly what the non-Judean cultures of the ancient world assumed as well. They assumed these were benevolent gods who were here to help humanity. The ancient astronaut theorists fall into the same trap.

However, we can use their research as long as we maintain the correct perspective. The ancient astronaut theorists look at very real evidence, but they treat the Book of Enoch as though it is on an equal level as all the rest of the evidence, which causes them to come to a very wrong conclusion. But we can look at that same evidence! We just need to remember that Jesus and the apostles validated the Book of Enoch as the true account – therefore, we can arrive at the correct conclusion.

As we begin to dive into this evidence, the point I want you to take away is this: All the ancient cultures of the world told the same story as the Book of Enoch. They didn't consider it "weird." Many cultures, separated by great distances and vast oceans all told the same story. This is evidence that this story must be true. There must be some fundamental historical origin to this story that all the people of the world held in common. This means that even though it tells a story which is weird from our perspective today, that doesn't mean it is fiction. The ancient world, which lived much closer to the time of these events, all told the same story. If they all said it happened, then something must have actually happened. And that is evidence.

What we will cover in this chapter is far from exhaustive. I will only barely scratch the surface of the evidence available. Countless cultures all across the world all told the same story. It is far more than

I can fit into a single chapter. Many books and videos have already been made on this topic. This chapter is meant to whet your appetite so that you can go and investigate it for yourself.

## THE ANUNNAKI



The ancient city of Ninevah, mentioned in the Bible, was of vital importance to the Assyrian and Babylonian Empires. It was located near the modern city of Mosul in Northern Iraq. In 1842, it was there that the British archaeologist Austin Henry Layard uncovered the ruins of an ancient library. This library was an ancient royal archive which contained thousands of clay tablets written in cuneiform which dated all the way back to around 3000 BC. They are considered to be some of the earliest known written accounts ever discovered.

Those tablets have been translated. They tell a story about how gods came to earth and intermingled with humans. According to the stories, the gods were called the *Anunnaki*.

The Anunnaki and another group of beings known as the *Igigi* were both frequently mentioned among the ancient cultures of Sumer and Babylon. It is generally accepted that the Anunnaki and Igigi were considered as gods in ancient Sumer and Akkad. However, they were also described as wise men, regulators, and sages.



The ancient Sumerians wrote that the Anunnaki interacted with people and sought out support. They wrote that the Anunnaki had descended from heaven, intermingled with humans, and married.

The very name *Anunnaki* comes from two root words, *An* which means *sky* or *heaven*, and *Ki* which means *Earth*. Put together, the word *Anunnaki* means *from heaven to earth*. This correlates with the story that the Anunnaki had descended to the earth from heaven.

There are too many historical accounts for us to go through them all. However, throughout the stories there is a common theme – there was always a direct connection between earthly people and the Anunnaki gods. They interacted with each other. It was consistently written as though a real event had taken place. It was not merely a

story or legend, but a real historical account.

The scholars have relegated all of these stories to the realm of mythology. But the Sumerians did not write it as mythology. They wrote about it as a specific historical event. It is called *mythology* today simply because that is our worldview – but that is not how the Sumerians and Babylonians viewed these stories. They described the



An Ancient Sumerian Depiction of the Anunnaki

Anunnaki as very real beings who had actually lived among them.

Modern historians have labeled these accounts as mythology simply because they don't believe in spiritual beings or gods. But they have backed themselves into a corner because the ancient accounts all speak of these gods as though there were real interactions with them in real historical encounters.

Just like the Book of Enoch, the Sumerians and Babylonians wrote about these events as real historical accounts. We have been raised to believe that ancient mythology was always understood to be fiction. But that is not true. The people of the ancient world viewed what we call *mythology* as truth. They wrote about these events as real events which had actually occurred. It is only modern scholars who have decided to treat those stories as if they were fiction.

Modern scholars start with a presupposition. They presuppose that gods and spirit-beings are not real. So, whenever an ancient culture wrote about a god or spirit-being, the scholars label it as a myth. But when you read those stories, it is clear that this was not the view of the ancient world.

So, as we can see, other cultures in the Mesopotamian area all told similar stories as what we see in the Book of Enoch. The Book of Enoch informs us that these beings were fallen angels, meanwhile the Sumerians and Babylonians saw these beings as gods – but the stories are virtually identical. The stories were simply told from different perspectives.

The stories from Sumer and Babylon match the Book of Enoch. It is evidence from the ancient past that corroborates what Enoch said. Enoch was not the only person who said that beings came down

from heaven, intermingled with humanity, married, and taught mankind all sorts of knowledge. The Sumerians and Babylonians shared the same stories, and they knew them to be true.

## ANUNNAKI IN INDIA



The stories of the Anunnaki are not isolated to Sumer and Babylon. There is an ancient Hindu temple in the small village of Lepakshi, India. At this temple, there is an ancient carving of a reptilian deity.

When the locals were asked what the name of that god was, they said it was named Anunaga – which is very similar to Anunnaki.

This is more than just a coincidence. Indian mythology tells the story of gods who came from heaven to earth. Their statues and carvings bear many similarities to the depictions of the Anunnaki from Sumer and Babylon.

The ancient Indian epics also tell many stories about their gods who came to earth, ruled among mankind, taught vast knowledge, and fought mighty wars. All of these stories can easily be seen in the Book of Enoch.

## THE ANT PEOPLE

It could be argued that the Judean, Babylonian, Sumerian, Akkadian, and Indian cultures were all close enough to one another to share their stories and develop similar mythologies. Perhaps their stories were similar simply because they were geographically located near one another, and their cultures overlapped.

But this same story can be found in detail on the other side of the world. Thousands of miles away, across vast oceans, the people of the ancient world told the same story. This can be found in Arizona among the Native American tribe known as the Hopi.

The Hopi have lived in Arizona for thousands of years. You can travel through the Southwest United States and find their paintings and carvings on canyon walls dating back to a time when humanity was supposedly



unable to travel the distances required to share stories and mythologies with one another.

Yet, the Hopi tell a very familiar story – a legend about a group of beings known as *the Ant People*.

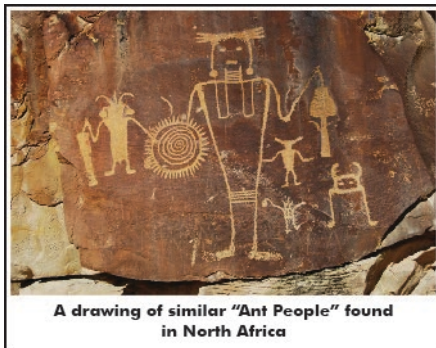
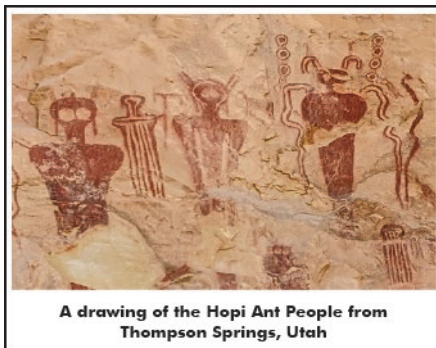
The Ant People were a group of beings who saved the Hopi people twice during some type of cataclysmic event. The Ant People hid the Hopi underground in caves, providing them with food and water. The legends depict the Ant People as generous and hardworking, and they say that the Ant People taught the Hopi the secrets of storing food without letting it spoil.

The Ant People are depicted in drawings with antennae or horns coming out of their heads. Identical drawings can be found all around the world – not just in North America. For example, identical ancient drawings have also been found in Africa.

The Hopi believed that the Ant People had some kind of deep connection with the constellation Orion. In February, when Orion is the brightest in the sky, the Hopi perform a sacred dance dedicated to a god named *Anu Sinom*. Anu Sinom is considered to be the Hopi god who taught them to grow beans and saved them from famine.

Interestingly, there is also a Babylonian god named *Anu*. So, the Hopi worship a god named *Anu*, which happens to be the exact same name as a Babylonian god. And the Hopi claim that Anu taught them information which helped them survive. This is already an interesting parallel, but it gets even stranger...

The Hopi refer to the Ant People as *Ant Friends*. The Hopi word for *Ant* is *Anu*. The words *Ant Friends* in the Hopi language is *Anu-Naki*. This is, obviously, the same thing as the Sumerian word *Anunnaki*, which referred to those beings that came to earth from heaven, taught mankind great information, and were worshiped as



gods.

This is no coincidence! The Hopi have been in North America for thousands of years. They supposedly had no connection or interaction with the Sumerians or Babylonians. Yet, they worshiped the same gods by the same name with the same stories! And those stories are perfectly in line with the story given to us in the Book of Enoch. This can only happen if there is some common origin to the story! Clearly something actually occurred which got everyone in the ancient world telling the same story.

This same story is not only found in cultures that interacted with each other, but it is found in cultures separated by entire oceans. This can only happen if that story originated with something true – a real historical event.

## THE SAME GODS BY DIFFERENT NAMES

As we saw with the Hopi, they worshiped the same god as the Babylonians. In this case, they both even called the god by the same name – Anu. Seeing as they were separated by such vast distances, the only logical conclusion is that something occurred in the distant past which gave both cultures the same information – the same gods with the same names.

It is strange to see the Hopi worshiping the same gods as the Babylonians. But it is far from an isolated event. When you examine the mythologies and gods from various ancient cultures, it quickly becomes obvious that they all shared the same gods. All the different nations told similar stories about their gods.

For example, Zeus to the Greeks was known as Jupiter to the Romans. He was known as Odin to the Norse, and he was known as Dyauspitr in Hinduism. Yet, across the board, it was the same god with the same powers who had taught the same information and often had the same stories. For example, in the Vedas of Hinduism, Dyauspitr was the father of the god Indra. Indra was one of the most famous gods, known for throwing lightning and wielding a hammer – much like Odin’s son Thor in Norse mythology. So, in both mythologies, the same god had the same son, with the same powers and legends. There was clearly a common origin.

More than this, you can even see that their names came from the same origin! In the Hindu Vedas, the god Dyauspitr comes from two words – *Dyaus*, meaning *Sky*, and *Pitr*, meaning *Father*. Altogether, his



name means *Sky Father*. In Greece, the same god is named Zeus Pater. *Zeus* means *Sky* and *Pater* means *Father*. So, once again, his name means *Sky Father*. If you say their two names out loud – *Dyauspitr* and *Zeus Pater*, you can even hear how the names sound very similar. Likewise, in Rome, the same god was named Jupiter. *Ju* means *Sky*, and *Piter* means *Father*. So, again, his name was *Sky Father*. And once again, *Jupiter* sounds very similar to *Dyauspitr* and *Zeus Pater*.



So – Greeks, Romans, and Hindus all had essentially the same name for the same god. They also had similar stories, which can additionally be seen overlapping with the Norse. And this is merely one example. This concept is seen all across the world.

How did all the cultures of the world develop the same stories for the same gods with the same names? This is not coincidence! That would be impossible! This can only happen if they all share the same origin! What is that origin? The Watchers.

## GIFTS OF THE GODS

The Book of Enoch taught extensively that the Watchers taught mankind all sorts of information and knowledge. This is a critical part of the story which we would expect to see reflected in the stories from other cultures as well.

We’ve already seen that the Hopi attributed their survival to the knowledge they gained from those Ant People who helped them. They were taught how to survive in a harsh desert environment by beings who looked like ants and came from the sky.

However, once again, this aspect of Enoch’s story is widely reflected throughout many different cultures of the ancient world.

To begin, we can see what Dr. Michael Heiser had to say about the Book of Enoch. Dr. Heiser is one of the very few scholars who is even willing to talk about the Book of Enoch. However, he does not view it as Scripture or as inspired. He accepts the traditions of men about the canon of Scripture and assumes that the Book of Enoch should remain left out of Scripture. Though he acknowledges that it was heavily influential on the New Testament, he still maintains the belief that it was fraudulently written by someone other than Enoch. So – he’s coming from a very different perspective than

I am, and I do not agree with his conclusions or even think they make logical sense.

However, regardless of his conclusions, he is an expert in the ancient Mesopotamian region. He knows their histories and their languages, and lots of useful information. One piece of information he has shared is that the Babylonian religion included the idea that their gods had given them all of their knowledge. During one lecture, he explained that the Babylonians told the same basic story as is told in the Book of Enoch:

“And in the Babylonian version, *they teach us wonderful things – they teach us about drugs, and they teach us about astrology, and they teach us about the dark arts, they teach us how to do all sorts of things. And we’re Babylon – we’re the greatest civilization on earth. We conquer everyone.*”<sup>1</sup>

In this quote, Dr. Heiser was speaking about the Book of Enoch. He was talking about how the Babylonians told the same story as the Book of Enoch – but from their own perspective. The Babylonians recognized that they had gained a vast amount of their knowledge from their gods. Their gods had taught them about drugs, astrology, the dark arts, and all sorts of other things.

Dr. Heiser knows the ancient culture and beliefs of Babylon more than most people. He is one of the leading experts in the field. And he stated that the Babylonians believed their gods had given them all this information. Dr. Heiser himself connected this back to the story told in the Book of Enoch and recognized that it is the same story from two different perspectives.

The Babylonians believed they got their information from their gods. This is something a lot of people fail to realize when they look at ancient religions. When we look at the gods of ancient cultures, we can see gods who were in charge of various things. For example, you might have the god of agriculture, or the god of sailing, or the god of war. What many people don’t realize is that these were not just the gods you were supposed to pray to in those particular situations – agriculture, sailing, warfare, etc. No, it was more than that. The ancient people believed that those gods were the beings who had taught them about that subject in the first place.

So, for example, the Babylonians, Greeks, Romans, or anyone else would pray to their respective god of war because that god of war was the god who had originally taught them about warfare.

Another example from Babylonian mythology is the god Nabu.

---

<sup>1</sup> Dr. Michael Heiser, <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=h5Z04SJENVE>



Nabu was the god who gave the gift of writing. According to the Babylonians, Nabu had given them written language and vast amounts of knowledge. It was entirely seen as a gift from the gods. This is particularly interesting because the Book of Enoch directly stated that the Watchers taught men how to write.<sup>1</sup> The Babylonian story is in complete agreement with the Book of Enoch!

According to TimelessMyths.com, “the ancient Mesopotamians believed that their gods were responsible for giving them everything. *Art, culture, technology, and law were all gifts from the gods.* To the Babylonians, not only was Nabu the son of their most powerful deity, but he also invented and bestowed writing to civilization... The Babylonians believed that Nabu bestowed writing upon their society. Historians recognize that *at least four different societies invented writing at the same time.*”<sup>2</sup>



The Babylonians believed that all of their knowledge, power, advancement, technology, art, culture, and everything else came to them as gifts from the gods. They understood that the gods had given these things to them. Moreover, historians even recognize that four separate societies all created writing at the same time! This is significant because it fits the story of Enoch perfectly! Those societies didn’t develop writing, it was given to them. That’s why they all got it at the same time – it was a gift from the Watchers! The ancient people, like the Babylonians, used to know that.

So, we can see that the Babylonians believed the gods had taught them their knowledge, information, and the ability to write.

But this was not limited to the Babylonians. Many other cultures shared the same belief.

For example, the Greeks held that the god Prometheus had taught mankind how to make fire. According to the story, Zeus forbade people from using fire. But Prometheus stole the secret knowledge of fire from heaven and gave it to mankind. As a result, Zeus bound

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 69:8-11

<sup>2</sup><https://www.timelessmyths.com/mythology/nabu/#:~:text=The%20ancient%20Mesopotamians,6%2C000%20years%20old.>



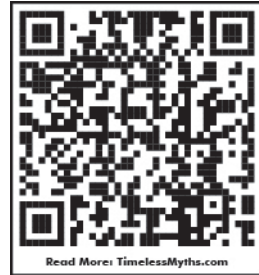
him in chains for eternity. This is very similar to the story of the Watchers. They stole secret knowledge from heaven, gave it to humanity, and as a result, they were bound in chains for the rest of time!

Prometheus is just one example. But from this, we can see that the Greeks believed the gods had provided them with various gifts and information.

Another clear example of this can be seen in Ancient Egypt. Anyone who knows anything about the ancient world knows that Ancient Egypt was considered the pinnacle of society. They were the most advanced civilization in the distant past. Even hundreds and thousands of years later, they were still revered and held in high esteem by the Greeks and the Romans. Long after the height of their golden age, they were still remembered as a mighty civilization with advanced knowledge. So, where did they get their knowledge from?

On TimelessMyths.com, we read:

*“Ancient Egyptian temples functioned as places of worship and centers of wisdom and learning... We often think of Ancient Egyptian temples as having primarily been places of religious worship, but that was only one of the many functions they fulfilled during ancient times... Ever since ancient times, priests have performed a variety of roles in Egyptian society. In addition to their role as interpreters of divine will and guardians of temples, priests acted as scholars, teachers, astronomers, mathematicians, doctors, and architects... Temples served as centers of learning... A temple in Egypt... was a center of economic activity and learning...”<sup>1</sup>*



Something most people today don't realize is that ancient priests served as more than just priests. Ancient pagan religions were where you would find the scholars, teachers, astronomers, mathematicians, doctors, and architects. The temples were centers of learning. They were schools!

Ancient religion was centered around learning and gaining

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://www.timelessmyths.com/history/ancient-egyptian-temples/>

knowledge. Why? Because those things were given to mankind by the gods – the Watchers!

This brings up a larger point worth mentioning.

All of ancient humanity, including the Book of Enoch (which, again, was endorsed by Jesus and the apostles), all state that these things – advancement, learning, knowledge, scholars, teachers, astronomers, mathematicians, doctors, architects, and probably more – all did not come from God. These things came from the enemy of God – from Satan. They were given to mankind by the Watchers, not by God.

If that's true, which we know it is because Jesus and the apostles endorsed it, then we need to recognize that many of the things we aspire to in our culture today might actually be things God hates.

That is worth considering. Too many Christians build their lives around doing things that God never wanted us to do in the first place. They think that doing it is a way for them to worship God. But it isn't what God told us to do! More than that, it comes from his enemy!

In Deuteronomy 12, God said numerous times that we should not worship *him* the same way the nations worship their gods.<sup>1</sup> This means you cannot adopt pagan practices of any kind and think that it is okay because your intention is to worship the one true God.

When the Israelites created the golden calf in the wilderness, it says they dedicated it to the LORD.<sup>2</sup> For those who don't know, whenever you see the word LORD in the Bible with all capital letters, it means the original text said God's name. There was no question who they thought they were worshiping when they made the golden calf. They thought they were worshiping the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob who had just brought them out of Egypt. Yet God saw it as idolatry because they had adopted pagan practices in order to worship him and as a result, many of them died.<sup>3</sup> It was just as evil as if they had been worshiping the false gods.

When Jeroboam created two golden calves, he also dedicated them to the LORD.<sup>4</sup> Once again, the people of Israel thought they were worshiping the one true God. Once again, they adopted pagan practices in order to do it. And once again, God saw it as idolatry,

---

<sup>1</sup> Deuteronomy 12:2-4; 12:13; 12:29-31

<sup>2</sup> Exodus 32:4-5

<sup>3</sup> Exodus 32

<sup>4</sup> 1 Kings 12:26-33; Josephus, *The Antiquities of the Jews*, 8.8.4

and as the very thing that led his people away from him.<sup>1</sup>

It doesn't matter if your heart or intention is to worship God. You cannot practice pagan customs. If you do, you commit idolatry. And as Paul said, "those who do these things will not inherit God's kingdom."<sup>2</sup>

Here, we can see how the nations worshiped their gods. They pursued knowledge. They developed centers of learning so they could become educated and accomplish new feats. Everything was about trying to gain and retain the knowledge provided by the Watchers.

Maybe we should reconsider our own priorities instead of conforming to the image of this world. Maybe we should begin to recognize that some of the things we love were actually given to us by Satan – by the Watchers. This should sober us if we have ears to hear and eyes to see.

However, this is not my main point for this chapter. My main point for now is to demonstrate that the nations and cultures of the ancient world recognized that they had been given information by their gods. Part of their very worship was their pursuit of that knowledge as a way of demonstrating their gratitude toward their gods. The stories they told about their gods correlated directly with what Enoch said had occurred.

This concept crossed cultural lines. The Babylonians, the Greeks, the Celts, the Norse, the Egyptians – they all held that their knowledge and information was given to them by the gods. They had their own version of the events – their own tales and stories, but the fundamental principle remains the same across all cultures. That story is the same story as told in the Book of Enoch.

## DEMIGODS

We have seen snippets (far from exhaustive) of how various cultures told stories of gods coming to earth, marrying women, and teaching mankind information. The next important aspect of Enoch's story is that the Watchers had children with those women.

This is something that can be found in the stories of cultures from all around the world. Nearly every culture told stories about how their

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Kings 12; 14:16; 15:26; 15:30; 15:34; 16:2; 16:19; 16:26; 2 Kings 3:3; 10:29; 10:31; 13:2; 13:6; 13:11; 14:24; 15:9; 15:18; 15:24; 15:28; 17:21-22; 23:15; etc...

<sup>2</sup> Galatians 5:19-21

gods had come down to earth and had children with human women. Many times, those children were later worshiped as gods themselves (due to their partly “divine” nature). These children are typically referred to as *demigods*.

The term *demigod* refers to anyone in “mythology” who was born to one mortal parent and one divine parent. This is, essentially, the same thing the Book of Enoch said. Remember – the other nations worshiped the Watchers as their gods. Enoch tells us that the Watchers came to earth and had children with human women. Those children would have been seen by those people as having one mortal parent, and one divine parent.

Greek mythology contains many examples of stories about demigods. It was very common in the Greek stories for one of the gods to descend to earth and form relationships with humans. In fact, Zeus was infamous for it. But it didn’t have to be Zeus – any of the other gods could have been that “divine” parent of a demigod.

In addition to this, the Book of Enoch informs us that those children were giants – they were extremely powerful. The Book of Genesis also referenced the giants, saying, “These women gave birth to children who became famous and were the mighty warriors of long ago.”<sup>1</sup> Likewise, the Greeks wrote that the demigods had powers beyond that of a mere mortal. These powers allowed them to become heroes in Greek society.

Our modern culture is deeply steeped in ancient Greek culture, so we can easily recognize many of the names of the Greek and Roman demigods: Achilles, Aeneas, Hercules, Helen of Sparta (and of Troy), Orion, Orpheus, Perseus, Theseus, etc.

However, the concept of demigods is not limited to the Greeks. Many other cultures also told stories of gods having children with human women.

These stories can be found in Celtic mythology. Cú Chulainn was a demigod – the son of the Irish god Lugh and the mortal woman Deichtine.

In China, Erlang Shen was a demigod born to the goddess Yaoji. Chen Xiang was a demigod born to the goddess Huayue Sanniang.

In Japan, Abe no Seimei was a demigod born as a child of one mortal and one divine being.

In the Philippines, there were many stories of demigods, including Mayari, Tala, Hanan, Apo Anno, Oryol, Laon, Ovug, Takyayen,

---

<sup>1</sup> Genesis 6:4

Labaw Dongon, Humadapnon, and Dumalapdap.

These are just a few examples. The concept of demigods can be found across countless cultures. People of the ancient world believed that their gods could come to earth and have children with humans. They also consistently told stories about those children being mighty warriors who won wars and became heroes.

All of this fits perfectly with the story of the Book of Enoch. The Book of Enoch tells us that those beings were not gods – that they were actually fallen angels. But otherwise, the stories are largely the same. And Moses clarified in Genesis that those children were the famous mighty warriors of long ago – those warriors mentioned in all the stories of all the nations. Perhaps we shouldn't be so quick to assume that their stories were mere fiction and mythology. Perhaps they all told similar stories for a reason – maybe it actually happened.

## GIANTS

Enoch did not merely state that the Watchers had children with human women. He explained that those children were giants. This is yet another important thread we should investigate. This topic is important to investigate regardless of the Book of Enoch. Giants are mentioned all throughout the Bible! If there were giants on the earth, wouldn't other nations and cultures mention it? They would. And they did. Nearly every ancient culture across the world told stories of giants.

We are very familiar with the giants mentioned in the Bible: Goliath, Og, the Anakim, the Nephilim, the Repha'im, and others. Enoch adds to those stories, but those stories are not exclusive to the Book of Enoch.

Many non-Christians use the topic of giants to try to attack Christianity and to attack the Bible. They act as if the Bible is the only ancient account of giants in the world. And they think the possibility of giants existing in the ancient past is ludicrous. But the Bible is far from the only ancient account of giants. In fact, it fits perfectly with the rest of the stories from the ancient world. Everyone back then seemed to think giants were real!

It is also worth noting that Enoch said the giants began to devour mankind. They were cannibals. This is a common thread found throughout the stories of giants from other cultures as well.

Hayk Nahapet, the founder of the Armenian nation, was said to



be a giant and mighty warrior.

The Aboriginal Australians told a story of a cannibal giant named Thardid Jimbo, as well as a giant creature known as Yowie.



Celtic mythology told the stories of many giants such as Brán the Blessed, Ysbaddaden Bencawr, Cormoran, and a giant named Gogmagog who is still worshiped in the Lord Mayor's Show in London to this day.

Gaelic mythology wrote about giants such as Bertram de Shotts, Fachan, and the race of the Fomorians.

In China, they wrote about giants such as Fangfeng and Kuafu.

The Dutch wrote about Druon Antigoon, Ellert, Brammert, and Pier Gerlofs Donia.

The English wrote about giants: Ascart, Blunderbore, Colbrand, Galehaut, and many others.

I could go on and on. There are giants in Finnic stories, countless giants in Norse stories, the French told stories of giants, the Germans had stories of giants, Greek and Roman mythology is full of giants, Basque and Cantabrian mythologies speak of giants. The Indian religions wrote about giants. There are Japanese stories, Malaysian stories, and countless Native American stories. There are Fijian stories, Māori stories, Persian stories, Philippine stories, Romanian stories, Bulgarian stories, Brazilian stories, Chilean stories, and on and on and on.

Everyone in the ancient world told stories about giants. They all thought giants were real, and they wrote about them as actual encounters. This is worth knowing because non-Christians act as if the Bible is the only place that tells stories of giants. That's not true! Every culture in the world said there were giants on the earth.

If every culture of the ancient world (once again, separated by vast distances and oceans) claimed to have seen and fought giants, there was probably something to it!

But perhaps it's just a big coincidence! Perhaps it's possible that everyone in the world could dream up the idea of larger-than-life people. This is very possible. The concept of a giant is not a difficult

thing for someone to imagine as they create make-believe stories. But it goes deeper than this. As you begin to read through the stories told, there are too many minor details that they all have in common. The giants were often cannibals. They often had six fingers and six toes. They were mighty and dangerous warriors. They often (not always) only had one eye. There are just too many minor details in common to say that everyone just so happened to dream up the same ideas. More than this, once again those stories were usually not told as fairytales. They were given as real historical accounts. The ancient people seemed to believe that they had actually seen these giants.

We should assume that the ancient cultures of the world knew more about the ancient past than we do. It is a fact that information gets lost with time. A historian who studies World War 2 today will know more about it than a historian who studies World War 2 four thousand years from now. That is simply fact. The entire war may be forgotten in four thousand years. Yet, despite this obvious reality, historians and scholars often dismiss the statements and information given to us by those of the ancient past because that information doesn't match what that scholar presupposes to be true about the distant past. Scholars assume they know more about the ancient world than the very people who lived in the ancient world. This very idea is absurd.

The people of the ancient past all described the world they lived in with stories of giants. But scholars don't believe in giants. So, they tell us that those stories were mere mythology. No one in the ancient world saw it that way. They knew those stories were true. And the Book of Enoch informs us as to how it all happened.

## THE CLASH OF THE TITANS

As we continue through Enoch's story, we learn that God punished the Watchers for what they did by forcing them to witness as their children – the giants – slaughtered each other in a cataclysmic war.

This is another crucial aspect of the story, and it is also backed up by countless ancient cultures. Those who lived long ago all spoke of a massive war that had occurred – a war between the gods that brought horrific destruction and death.

In Greek mythology, this story is known as the Titanomachy – the War of the Titans, or the Clash of the Titans. There was also a similar

event known as the Gigantomachy – a war between the gods and the giants.

Both stories told of how the Titans and the Giants (respectively) fought a war against the gods. Both wars lasted for years and caused massive destruction.

The stories are very detailed, and probably contain many truths as well as many embellishments. It is easy for us to dismiss the stories as fiction because they are strange and also probably embellished. Furthermore, if the Watchers truly taught advanced technology, these Greek stories would have been told by people who did not fully understand that technology. So, it makes it sound even more like fiction when we read it. That does not mean it is actually fiction.

We must begin to recognize the foundational truth behind the story – a foundational truth which runs throughout many cultures of the ancient world, including the Book of Enoch.

The basic story, as told by the Greeks, is this: the Titans and the Giants fought massive wars against the Olympian gods. It was extremely destructive. The end result was that the Titans were imprisoned in Tartarus.

The Book of Enoch tells the same story – the children of the Watchers were stirred up to fight wars with each other. Through those wars, they slaughtered each other and wiped each other out. Then, the Watchers were bound with chains in darkness.

Here is the significance: the Greeks told this same story, and it concluded with the Titans imprisoned in Tartarus. That was the name the Greeks used for the underground prison where they were held. However – the New Testament was predominantly written in Greek. It was predominantly written to Greeks. And it connects the dots for us. It shows us beyond any doubt that the Greek story is the same story told by Enoch.

When Peter wrote the book now known as Second Peter, he taught from the Book of Enoch. We have already seen this in an earlier chapter. However, he was writing to Greeks, so he used their own terminology. Here is what he said:

“When angels sinned, God did not spare them. But he sent them to **Tartarus** and put them in caves of darkness where they are being held for judgment.”<sup>1</sup>

We have been raised and taught to believe that Greek mythology is all fiction. Yet the New Testament corroborates it. When you

---

<sup>1</sup> 2 Peter 2:4

recognize that Greek mythology and the Book of Enoch are essentially and fundamentally telling the same stories (albeit from very different perspectives), then you must also recognize that the New Testament says those Greek mythological stories are true – or, at least, the origin of those stories is true.

Peter referenced the story as told in the Book of Enoch, but when writing in Greek to a Greek audience, he used the Greek terminology which came from the Greek version of the same story. He said the angels that sinned were bound in Tartarus. Tartarus was the prison for the Titans. After the War of the Titans, those who lost that war were bound in Tartarus.

Unlike Christians today, Peter understood that the Jewish Scriptures and the Greek mythologies all told the same historical account. They told the same story from different perspectives. We don't recognize this today because we come from the worldview that all those stories were just myths, legends, and fiction. That is not true. The Greeks did not see their stories as fiction, and neither did Peter. Those stories were very real historical accounts.

## THE MAHABHARATA

The Greeks were not the only ones who spoke of an ancient cataclysmic war. The ancient Indian stories told of similar events. In the book, *Technology of the Gods, The Incredible Sciences of the Ancients*, David Hatcher Childress summarized the stories as told in India:

“The Rama Empire, described in the *Mahabharata* and *Ramayana*, was supposedly contemporaneous with the great cultures of Atlantis and Osiris in the West. Atlantis, well-known from Plato's writings and ancient Egyptian records, apparently existed in the mid-Atlantic and was a very highly technological and patriarchal civilization. As we have noted, the Osirian civilization existed in the Mediterranean basin and North Africa, according to esoteric doctrine and archeological evidence... The Rama Empire flourished during the same period...

“As noted above, the ancient Indian epics describe a series of horrific wars, wars which could have been between ancient India and Atlantis... The *Mahabharata* and the *Drona Parva* (another ancient Indian epic) speak of the war and of the weapons used: great fireballs that could destroy a whole city, ‘Kapilla's Glance’ which could burn fifty thousand men to ashes in seconds, and flying spears that could

ruin whole ‘cities full of forts.’

“It was at the height of power for both the Rama Empire and Atlantis that the war allegedly broke out, seemingly because of Atlantis’ attempt to subjugate Rama... Equipped with a formidable force and a ‘fantastic array of weapons,’ the Atlanteans landed in their vailixi outside of one of the Rama cities, got their troops in order and sent a message to the ruling Priest-King of the city that he should surrender. The Priest-King sent word back to the Atlantean general: ‘We of India have no quarrel with you of Atlantis. We ask only that we be permitted to follow our own way of life.’

“Regarding the ruler’s mild request as a confession of weakness, and expecting an easy victory, as the Rama Empire did not possess the technology of war nor the aggressiveness of the Atlanteans, the Atlantean general sent another message: ‘We shall not destroy your land with the mighty weapons at our command provided you pay sufficient tribute and accept the rulership of Atlantis.’

“The Priest-King of the city responded humbly again, seeking to avert war: ‘We of India do not believe in war and strife, peace being our ideal. Neither would we destroy you or your soldiers who but follow orders. However, if you persist in your determination to attack us without cause and merely for the purpose of conquest, you will leave us no recourse but to destroy you and all of your leaders. Depart, and leave us in peace.’

“Arrogantly, the Atlanteans did not believe that the Indians had the power to stop them, certainly not by technical means. At dawn, the Atlantean army began to march on the city. From a high viewpoint, the Priest-King sadly watched the army advance. Then he raised his arms heavenward and... he caused the General, and then each officer in order of rank, to drop dead in his tracks... In a panic, and without leaders, the remaining Atlantean force fled to the waiting vailixi and retreated in terror to Atlantis! Of the sieged Rama city, not one man was lost.

“While this may be nothing but fanciful conjecture, the Indian epics go on to tell the rest of the horrible story, and things do not turn out well for Rama. Atlantis, assuming the above story is true, was not pleased at the humiliating defeat, and therefore used its most powerful and destructive weapon... These are verses from the ancient *Mahabharata*:

“... (it was) a single projectile  
Charged with all the power of the Universe.  
An incandescent column of smoke and flame

ENOCH

*As bright as the thousand suns  
Rose in all its splendor...  
...it was an unknown weapon,  
An iron thunderbolt,  
A gigantic messenger of death,  
Which reduced to ashes  
The entire race of the  
Vrishnis and the Andhakas.  
...The corpses were so burned  
As to be unrecognizable.  
The hair and nails fell out;  
Pottery broke without apparent cause,  
And the birds turned white...  
...After a few hours  
All foodstuffs were infected...  
...to escape from this fire  
The soldiers threw themselves in streams  
To wash themselves and their equipment.”<sup>1</sup>*

In this ancient Indian epic, we can see this clear description of a war which occurred in the distant past – a war which wiped out entire cities in a single moment. Once again, this story was not written as a fictional tale, but as a true historical account.

It is easy for us to dismiss a story like this as pure fiction because we can't imagine that anyone in the ancient world had the ability to do such a thing. But what if spiritual beings from heaven had brought secret advanced knowledge to mankind in the distant past? Do you think those spiritual beings were less informed than today's modern scientists? We have the ability today to destroy an entire city in a single moment! We know it is possible!

Moreover, the account written in this ancient Indian text accurately described a nuclear weapon – an incandescent column of smoke and flames as bright as a thousand suns which reduced the entire race to ashes. It also accurately described the effects of radiation poisoning – hair and nails fell out, pottery broke, birds turned white, food was poisoned, and people threw themselves into water to try to clean themselves (water is known to alleviate the pain from radiation).

---

<sup>1</sup> David Hatcher Childress, *Technology of the Gods: The Incredible Sciences of the Ancients*, Adventures Unlimited Press, 200, pp. 234-237

Perhaps this is why Robert Oppenheimer, the inventor of the nuclear bomb, quoted the ancient Indian text, the Bhagavad-Gita, “Now I am become Death, the destroyer of worlds.”

It is very eerie to see how accurately the ancient Indians could describe nuclear weapons. And the Book of Enoch tells us how people of the ancient world could have possibly had such advanced technology. Though it is strange for our modern minds to consider, we should not be so quick to dismiss the possibility.

However, regardless of whether or not this described nuclear weapons, the fact remains that the ancient Indians told stories of a massive cataclysmic war which wiped out entire people groups. This matches the account given to us in the Book of Enoch. At some point in the distant past, the children of the gods began to fight one another until they completely slaughtered each other. The stories that come to us from the ancient world all agree that this truly did happen.

## CONCLUSION

My point for this chapter has been simply to help you open your eyes to see that the story told by the Book of Enoch is corroborated across many cultures of the ancient world. It is not an isolated fairytale told only within the Jewish culture. All the people of the world told the same stories. They knew that these things had actually occurred.

So, even though it is a bit of a wild story which seems so strange to us and fictional, we should not dismiss it as such. In the context of what all the people of the world used to say, the Book of Enoch actually makes a lot of sense.

Those who have taught us history do not consider the stories of ancient cultures as any type of evidence. Therefore, they have never bothered to compare those stories to one another in order to see that they all said the same thing. Despite what the scholars may say, these stories are evidence! They clearly point to a common origin. There is no other plausible explanation. It is impossible that people from every part of the world all imagined the same stories with the same gods with the same names and the same events. There is no possibility of that happening by chance. Therefore, these stories all originated somewhere. The question then is only, where?

Where did these stories come from? The Book of Enoch tells us. A real event occurred long ago in which angels came to earth, married

women, taught mankind advanced knowledge, had children who were giants, and it all ultimately ended with a cataclysmic war.

This is why we need to look at these things. It corroborates the Book of Enoch, and it corroborates the Bible. More than this, it helps us understand the world we live in better. As we begin to recognize what the ancient pagan religions were really all about, we can begin to recognize that they are still all around us today. We must be careful that we are not like them. We must be careful that we do not also begin to worship the Watchers and the knowledge they taught.

We have barely begun to scratch the surface in this chapter. There is so much information available which confirms that other cultures taught the same story as Enoch. My goal has been to merely demonstrate that this is true so that you can go investigate these things for yourself.

One of the biggest reasons Christians don't understand things in the Bible is because they don't understand our own history. They don't know where we've come from, and they don't know about the spiritual influences that have shaped human development. It helps to know the Book of Enoch. Jesus and the apostles corroborated it, and it explains history to us. It is also verified by the ancient cultures and "mythologies" handed down to us by those who lived long ago.

Even though it is strange, it is true.



# TEN

## Archaeological Evidence That the Book of Enoch is True

When we read the story of the Book of Enoch, there are certain elements of that story which we would expect to find in the archaeological record. We might not expect to find archaeological evidence of actual Watchers – fallen angels who walked around on earth. But the story says that those Watchers had children, and those children were giants. We should expect to find archaeological evidence of giants!

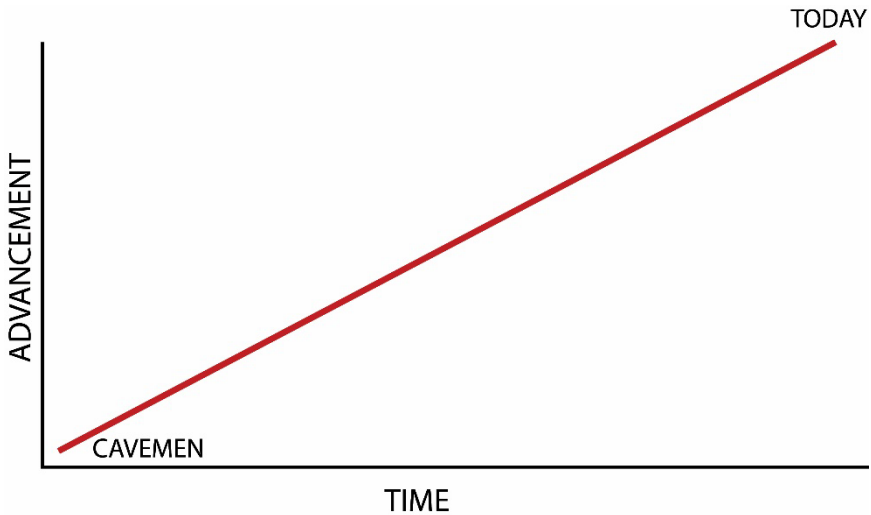
Furthermore, Enoch said that the Watchers taught mankind all sorts of knowledge, technology, and advancement. We should expect to find archaeological evidence that there was some kind of technology or advancement in the ancient world.

In addition to this, we should expect to find archaeological evidence of an ancient cataclysmic war, because the Book of Enoch said that the giants fought against each other and wiped each other out in a cataclysmic war. The giants lived on the earth for hundreds of years and had an advanced civilization. If they fought a war against each other and wiped each other out, this would have caused a massive amount of destruction all around the world. We should expect to see signs of that destruction in the archaeological record.

## WHY ARE WE NOT TAUGHT ANY OF THIS?

Before we can look at any of that evidence, we must first address a very obvious question. This was a big question I had when I first began to research these things. That question is – if there really is a ton of evidence for giants, ancient technology, an ancient worldwide civilization, and a cataclysmic war which wiped out that civilization, why is no one talking about it? Why were we not taught this in school?

We’ve all grown up, gone to school, and learned history. We were taught that mankind has developed more or less linearly:



We have been taught that humanity developed from a very primitive state, and that the further back we go, the more primitive people were. However, the Book of Enoch tells a very different story.

It tells us that long ago the Watchers came to earth and gave mankind advanced knowledge. It tells us that they lived on earth for hundreds of years with their children who were giants.

So, if there is evidence that confirms Enoch's story, why is this not the history we've been taught? Why have we been told that the ancient world was inhabited by primitive hunter-gatherers and cavemen?

To answer this question, we should look at the book of Second Peter in the New Testament. Peter wrote:

“It is most important for you to understand what will happen in the last days. People will ridicule you... they willfully forget what happened long ago. By the word of God heaven was made, and the earth was made from water and with water. Then the world was flooded and destroyed with water.”<sup>1</sup>

In this passage, Peter said it is most important that we understand what will happen in the last days. Now, we should pause and clarify that throughout the New Testament, the apostles referred to the entire age we live in as *The Last Days*. This was not some reference to some seven-year tribulation period at the end of time. This referred to the entire age from when the apostles lived until when Jesus returns.

So, we live in the last days they referred to. And Peter said that it is most important that we understand what would happen in this time we live in. And then he explained what he was talking about – people will ridicule Christians because those people willfully forget what happened long ago. In other words, they will choose to forget and ignore the past – specifically, creation (“by the word of God heaven was made”) and the flood (“then the world was flooded and destroyed with water”). This is not an ignorant forgetfulness, this is willful – it is a choice.

According to Peter, we live in a time when people will choose to forget that God created the world and that the flood ever happened.

This is precisely what we see today. People throughout the world have chosen to forget creation and the flood. They have made a choice to disbelieve those stories.

Why is this important for our discussion on Enoch? Because the Book of Enoch describes the events which occurred during the time period between creation and the flood. When people wrote creation and the flood out of our history books, by extension they also

---

<sup>1</sup> 2 Peter 3:3-6

removed the events of the Book of Enoch.

This is why no one teaches the evidence that supports the Book of Enoch. As we will see, that evidence exists all over the world, and it is very abundant. But it is not taught or even mentioned because if they did mention it, they would be forced to face questions regarding creation and the flood as well – things they are determined to disprove.

Hundreds of years ago, the scientific community made up its mind that the biblical story was not true. Ever since then, they have filtered the evidence so as to always keep it supporting their worldview. Therefore, anything that goes against their worldview – including evidence for the Watchers, giants, an ancient advanced civilization, and the flood – have all been scrubbed from any kind of mainstream discussion.

This is why we have not been taught about any of the evidence that supports these stories. Just because we have not been taught about it does not mean that evidence does not exist.

Modern science has abandoned the scientific method. They have become what is called *Scientism*. Scientism is not science. It is a religion. They teach their worldview to others and present it as if it is proven fact. But it is not fact. All of the evidence that contradicts their worldview is simply not acknowledged. It is covered up.

But inevitably, holes begin to appear in their “scientific” theories. When this happens, they then come up with new theories to patch the holes in their old theories. Instead of a true scientific approach which would recognize that the first theory was wrong, they simply patch their old theory with new theories. And when those new theories inevitably are proven wrong, they create yet new theories to patch those theories as well. In the end, we are left with nothing more than a house of cards that only stands because they control the information and education. As a result, the vast majority of the population believes in an entirely fictional reality that was created by the imagination of the scientists. This is what is called *Science* today. It is not science, it is scientism.

## NO INTELLIGENCE ALLOWED

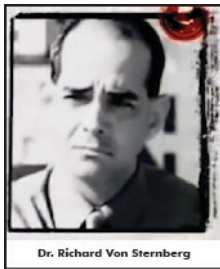
Some people may think it is a bold claim to say that science is this corrupt. And I never want anyone to just take my word for it. These things can be easily proven.

Back in 2008, the author, actor, and political commentator Ben Stein released a documentary entitled, *Expelled: No Intelligence Allowed*. It is a very good documentary. I highly recommend it.

In this documentary, Ben Stein specifically addressed how modern science handles the issue of creation. Remember – Peter said that people in our day would willfully forget creation and the flood. Ben Stein (who is not a Christian, by the way – he is Jewish) set out to demonstrate this exact concept. He proved that the scientific community refuses to even consider the possibility that the evidence might point to creation.



In this documentary, he interviewed numerous scientists who had had their careers destroyed simply because they had mentioned the possibility of intelligent design...



Dr. Richard Von Sternberg

Dr. Richard Von Sternberg holds a Ph.D. in Biology (Molecular Evolution), he holds a Ph.D. in Systems Science (Theoretical Biology), and he has published more than thirty articles in peer-reviewed scientific books and publications. Despite all of this, his life was turned upside down when he strayed from the party line while working as an editor of a scientific journal which was connected to the Smithsonian Museum of

Natural History.

While serving as editor, Dr. Sternberg chose to publish an article written by Dr. Stephen Meyer – an advocate of intelligent design. As Ben Stein stated, “The paper ignited a firestorm of controversy merely because it suggested intelligent design *might* be able to explain how life began. As a result, Dr. Sternberg lost his office, his political and religious beliefs were investigated, and he was pressured to resign.”

Dr. Sternberg related, “The way the Chair of the Department put it is that I was viewed as an intellectual terrorist because of giving the topic of intelligent design some modicum of credibility.”

Ben Stein then continued on to interview Dr. Caroline Crocker, who holds a PhD in Immunopharmacology from the University of Southampton, UK.

Dr. Crocker did nothing more than mention intelligent design in her biology class at George Mason University. She stated, “My supervisor invited me into his office. He said, ‘I’m going to have to discipline you for teaching creationism.’ And I said, ‘I mentioned intelligent design on a couple of slides. But I did not teach creationism.’ He said, ‘Nonetheless, you have to be disciplined.’ At the end of the semester, I lost my job.”



Dr. Caroline Crocker

But it went deeper than this. Not only had Dr. Crocker lost her job at George Mason University, but she found herself blacklisted – unable to get a job anywhere else. Prior to this event, she had typically been offered a job on the spot when she interviewed. But since this event, she gets many interviews, but never gets offered a job.



Dr. Michael Egnor

Next, Ben Stein interviewed Dr. Michael Egnor. Dr. Egnor was a neurosurgeon who had graduated with his medical degree from Columbia University. When he wrote an essay to high school students in which he stated that doctors did not need to study evolution in order to practice medicine, he came under attack. He was called names, received many nasty comments, and had his job threatened.

The documentary next turned to Professor Robert J. Marks II, a distinguished Professor of Engineering at Baylor University, author of over 120 journal publications, 140 conference papers, and 21 book chapters, as well as the owner of three patents.



Professor Robert J. Marks II

When he dared to talk about the possibility of intelligent design, Baylor University shut down his website and forced him to return grant money.

Astronomer Dr. Guillermo Gonzalez was next. He holds a PhD in Astronomy from the University of Washington and was an Assistant Professor of Astronomy at Iowa State University. Ben Stein stated, “Despite a stellar research record that had led to the discovery of several planets, his application for tenure was denied, putting his career in jeopardy.”

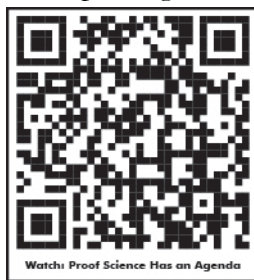


Dr. Gonzalez stated, “I have little doubt that I would have tenure now if I hadn’t done any professional work on intelligent design.” When asked if he had any advice for other scientists, he said, “If they value their careers, they should keep quiet about their intelligent design views.”

Ben Stein continued on, interviewing many scientists who wouldn’t dare show their face on camera for fear of losing their jobs. One of them said, “You use an intelligent design perspective to get the research done. But you’re not allowed to talk about it in public.”

Ben Stein continued the documentary, showing that the scientific world shuts down any narrative other than the one it wants. They do not actually follow the evidence. Many of the people he interviewed were not even Judeo-Christian. They had simply been honest with themselves about the evidence and concluded that it pointed to some kind of intelligent design. Yet the scientific community would not allow them to mention it.

Mainstream science has an agenda. Their goal is to discredit the Bible – whether it fits the evidence or not. Their scientists are openly hostile to God and to Scripture. The late Rob Skiba put together a compilation to demonstrate the hostility of mainstream scientists toward God and Christianity. The video is almost too much to stomach, and I dare not even put their words in print. But if you are unsure at all about their agenda, scan the QR code to the right and watch that video. You must understand that mainstream science is not neutral on the topic. They have an agenda.



## THE EMPEROR HAS NO CLOTHES

Scientists everywhere are waking up to the reality that they are not free to criticize the establishment or follow the evidence. In the book, *Forbidden History*, edited by J. Douglas Kenyon, each chapter was written by a different scientist or researcher. These authors are secular non-Christian scientists who have begun to take a stand against Darwinism as they recognize that it holds no water.

It is important to state that these are not Christian creationists. If

you approach an atheist and make these claims from a Christian perspective, they will just dismiss you as a Bible-thumping Christian, and assume you are ignorant of the facts. But these are not Christians. They are not Bible-believing scientists who want people to recognize that God is the Creator. No, these are unbelievers, many of whom were previously staunch supporters of Darwinism. Yet they are willing to acknowledge where the evidence leads.

In the first chapter of *Forbidden History*, the author Will Hart writes, “In an interview about his penetrating critique, *Facts of Life: Shattering the Myth of Darwinism*, the science journalist Richard Milton describes what made him write the book: ‘It was the absence of transitional fossils that first made me question Darwin’s idea of gradual change. I realized, too, that the procedures used to date rocks were circular. Rocks are used to date fossils; fossils are used to date rocks. From here I began to think the unthinkable: Could Darwinism be scientifically flawed?’

“As a science journalist and writer with a lifelong passion for geology and paleontology - and no religious beliefs to get in the way - I was in a unique position to investigate and report on the state of Darwin’s theory in the 1990s. The result was unambiguous. Darwin doesn’t work here any more.’

“According to Milton, who *had* been a firm Darwinist, when he began to rethink the theory, he became a regular visitor to Great Britain’s prestigious Natural History Museum. He put the best examples that Darwinists had gathered over the years under intense scrutiny. One by one they failed to pass the test. He realized that many scientists around the world had already arrived at the same conclusion. The emperor was as naked as an ape. Why had no one gone public with papers critiquing the theory?

“What trained, credentialed scientist earning a living through a university or government position wants to jeopardize a career and earn the disdain of colleagues in the process? Apparently none.”<sup>1</sup>

Richard Milton – a secular, atheist scientist coming from a Darwinist perspective – was willing to look at the evidence and be honest about what he saw. Darwin lived in the 1800’s, and we have gathered a vast amount of evidence since his time. We can now see very clearly – Darwinism is wrong.

Yet, despite this, it continues to be taught in schools. It continues

---

<sup>1</sup> *Forbidden History*, J. Douglas Kenyon, Bear & Company, pp. 10-11; *Darwin’s Demise*, Will Hurt



to be taught as fact. Milton recognized the same thing Ben Stein saw in his documentary – if you speak out against the establishment, they will shut you down, destroy your life, and remove your tenure. These are bullying tactics. But this is how science operates today, and this is why you do not hear about any of this evidence in school or museums.

People are willfully forgetting about creation. It is not that the scientists are uninformed – no, they are choosing to ignore the evidence.

This concept is not limited to creation. We can see the same concept when we look at the evidence for the flood.

In chapter six of *Forbidden History*, the author Peter Bros (again, a non-Christian) points to the vast amount of evidence for the flood and connects the dots for us. He shows that science has purposefully ignored all the evidence for the flood, and by doing so, they were forced to also ignore all the evidence that points to a worldwide civilization which was destroyed by that flood. Though he doesn't know it, the worldwide civilization he mentions is the civilization established by the Watchers and the giants as told by the Book of Enoch.

He wrote, "...the scientific establishment unknowingly cast its lot against a prehistorical civilization before the evidence began showing up. It did so by enforcing the eighteenth-century rule of reason which stipulated that God could not be used as an explanation for physical reality, thereby rejecting out of hand the possible validity of all biblical accounts and, in the case of a worldwide prehistoric society, the possibility that a flood of biblical proportions destroyed all but the megalithic evidence for that civilization.

"Making the world of science safe against Bible-thumpers became the overriding goal of nineteenth-century science. Science, at this time, was unaware that accounts of a universal flood appear around the globe, the universal flood being a part of the myths and traditions of more than five hundred separated cultures.

"As explorers started to bring home descriptions of the world from afar, science was horrified to see a picture emerging of a planet scarred by massive movements of water, generally from the northwest to the southeast, over its surface. The northwestern sides of whole mountains were scored as if they had been subjected to fast-moving waters containing gravel and boulders. Floodwater was unmistakably the source of the scoring because science could see the same effect from fast-moving rivers.

“Furthermore, those same sides of the mountains were also home to massive buildups of drift materials, detritus presumably left behind by receding waters. Again, this was an effect that mimicked natural actions in the real world. These drift deposits even contained the remains of animals, including the woolly mammoth.

“More horrifying to nineteenth-century scientists than the evidence of water damage and silting were the gigantic boulders exposed to public view all over the European countryside in places where they clearly didn’t belong. These oversized rocks, many weighing thousands of tons, could have been moved only by massive floodwaters carrying them along and then depositing them when the waters receded.

“What to do with these discoveries that constituted irrefutable evidence of a worldwide flood? If science had been true to the evidence and concluded that the evidence had, in fact, resulted from a worldwide flood, religious crazies would have filled the pulpits and newspapers with cries that the biblical story of the flood, and thus the entire Bible, had been scientifically confirmed: not a desirable result...

“Science, however, is an enterprise that turns beliefs into facts, and it accomplishes this feat so well that its myths become more real than actual facts. It takes hypotheses, mere notions, and crafts a methodology designed to do the impossible - to turn those notions into facts...

“The task that faced science when it was confronted with the incontrovertible evidence of a worldwide flood was to create a scientific fact that would provide a substitute for the already existing evidence left behind by the actual flood...

“Louis Agassiz consolidated speculations... by enthroning himself as the inventor of the ice age. Agassiz’s creation, for scientific and public consumption, was a distinct reversal of the scientific process. Instead of taking an idea and using unknown facts to prove it to be a scientific fact, Agassiz took disparate facts that led inexorably to an uncomfortable conclusion - a worldwide flood - and then created an idea - the ice age - that could be used in place of the uncomfortable (flood) idea. And then he exclaimed his ice age theory to be scientific fact!

“...the ice age is no more than a proposition, a *possible* explanation for the reality that we see. Science saw the evidence of the flood described in the Bible and created the ice age to avoid the appearance of verifying an event described in the Bible... In the meantime,

subsequent discoveries continued to verify the existence of a worldwide flood and mirrored the hundreds of newly encountered myths and traditions attesting to the flood's actuality..."

Peter Bros continued, explaining why the Ice Age does not fit the evidence – too much for me to include here. But then he continued, writing about what has resulted from this Ice Age theory...

"There was no room in the past for a megalithic society, a worldwide, ante-diluvian civilization that would easily explain both the physical remains of such a civilization and the flood that brought that civilization to an end. The past was dominated by an ice age created to explain the evidence for the flood that destroyed the worldwide civilization.

"Today, we are stuck with the scientific fact, the myth, that ice can creep down from the North Pole and cover Europe and North America. Once the scientific community has accepted a theory as fact, any evidence is acceptable so long as it is cast to support the theory and no evidence is sufficient to disprove the theory. Without opposition, the theory becomes part of the founding principles of whole new fields of inquiry."<sup>1</sup>

Once again, this was written by a non-Christian. Yet, he is willing to recognize that all the physical evidence found around the world points to the flood story. More than that, he is willing to look at the history of science and recognize how we arrived where we are today – where everyone believes an idea that makes no sense and was only created to keep people from recognizing the truth of the Bible.

As Peter said, they are willfully forgetting about creation and the flood. Peter's prophecy was perfectly accurate. Those are the two biblical stories that have come under the most attack.

Peter Bros also points out that the evidence found all around the world indicates without a doubt that there was a worldwide civilization which was wiped out by the flood. Even Christians tend to be wrong about this. Christians themselves often assume that the world was not very populated at the time of the flood. But this isn't true. The evidence clearly indicates that humanity had established a civilization that spanned the entire earth – just like we have today. By covering up the flood story, they were forced to ignore the indisputable evidence of this worldwide civilization.

This is why we don't learn in school that there is evidence for an

---

<sup>1</sup> Forbidden History, J. Douglas Kenyon, Bear & Company, pp.44-50, The Case for the Flood, Peter Bros

ancient worldwide civilization, or giants, or advanced technology, or the flood. Science has purposefully buried this information. They continue to teach that we come from cavemen and have advanced over time to our current level of technology. They teach this in spite of the evidence – not because of the evidence. They do not want us to understand what the evidence actually points to, because that evidence points to the Bible.

## SCIENTISM EXPOSED

Evidence continues to appear that disproves the so-called scientific “facts” we are taught in school.

For example, in Glen Rose, Texas, there are dinosaur tracks in Cretaceous limestone. According to the theory of evolution, these tracks are supposedly 110 million years old. Based on the erosion rate alone, that limestone should have eroded five feet over the course of 110 million years. Those tracks should have disappeared millions of years ago. But they didn’t – those tracks are still perfectly visible. The only logical conclusion is that those dinosaur tracks are much more recent.

In addition to this, there are human fossil footprints found in the same stone as the dinosaur footprints, and they’re on the same layer of that stone. According to mainstream science, dinosaurs and men were separated by 65 million years. Yet the fossil record shows that they walked the earth at the same time. This is also not isolated to Glen Rose, TX. This phenomenon has been discovered all over the world. Yet science has simply ignored it and chosen to continue to teach the theory that this evidence has disproven.

In Crosbyton, Texas, a paleontologist named Joe Taylor has opened the Mt. Blanco Fossil Museum. Joe Taylor has dedicated his life to disproving the claims of scientism. In his museum, he has collected evidence which supports a worldwide flood and the existence of giants. He demonstrates that the methods science uses to date fossils are completely unreliable. He said, “We had some wood tested. One end of it was of a vastly different age than the other end of the same piece! Well then, what’s true?”<sup>1</sup>

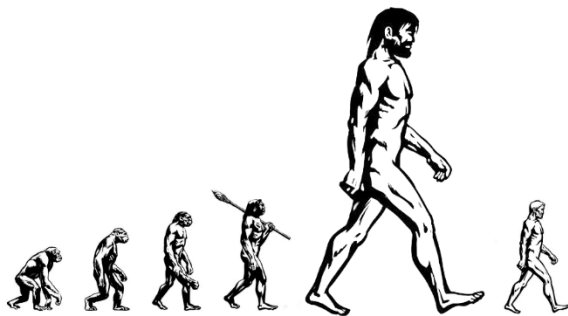
In his museum, Joe Taylor has a full-size replica of a human femur bone that was found in Egypt. Based on the size of the bone, the

---

<sup>1</sup> Taken in an interview in the documentary, *Scientism Exposed 2* by Robbie Davidson

person would have had to have been at least fourteen feet tall – maybe more. Once again, this disproves evolution.

The theory of evolution states that monkeys evolved into humans.



This theory has a giant problem. If giants truly existed, then where did they fit in the classic monkey-to-man lineup?

Throughout the rest of this chapter, we will explore the evidence found from around the world that supports the story told in the Book of Enoch. As we do so, keep in mind why this evidence is not mainstream information. Mainstream science may not address these things, but that does not mean the evidence doesn't exist. The reality is that they don't *want* to address these things. They want to sweep it under the rug. They know that the evidence found around the world supports the story of the Bible, therefore they bury the evidence, cover it up, or create their own theories to explain it away. They willfully forget about creation and the flood. But the evidence is still very real – you just have to be willing to go find it for yourself.

## GIANTS

We know the Bible tells us that giants once lived on the earth. But it's sometimes hard for us to remember that these stories are not fairytales. The Bible is an historical book. Likewise, as we have seen, the Book of Enoch tells us the origin story of the giants. They were not human. They were the half-breed children of angels and humans.

But the question that often goes unanswered is this: If giants once lived on the earth, then where are they? What happened to them? Or, more precisely – why haven't we found their bones?

The answer to this question may be surprising: We *have* found their bones. We've found their bones all over the place. There is a treasure-trove of historical documentation of giants being found all across the Americas – and all over the world.

There are more than 1500 accounts from newspapers and books published in the 1800s and early 1900s documenting giant remains unearthed in ancient burial mounds or other archaeological digs.

In the Arkansas Chickasawba Mound, many skeletons were found, ranging from eight to nine feet in length. As late as 1976, a seven foot tall skeleton was found at the site.

Large bones and stone graves were discovered in Tennessee in the 1800s. The average height of the skeletons was seven feet tall. In 1833, soldiers found a skeleton that was twelve feet tall in California. It had double-rows of teeth – common among many of the giants found around the world.

Another giant was found off the coast of California on Santa Rosa Island in the 1800s. It was distinguished by its double-row of teeth. Another nine-foot, eight-inch skeleton was excavated near Burnsville, Indiana in 1879. More giant skeletons were found near Zanesville, Ohio and Warren, Minnesota in the 1800s.

Seven giants were found in Clearwater, Minnesota, all with two rows of teeth. Skeletons of giants over eighteen feet tall were found in Dresbach, Minnesota.

In 1888, seven skeletons ranging from seven to eight feet tall were discovered. Another twenty skeletons were found in Toledo, Ohio that averaged around twelve feet tall. In 1932, human footprints were found at White Sands, New Mexico. The footprints were confirmed by the Supervisor of Lincoln National Park and many others. The footprints were twenty-two inches long, and eight to ten inches wide.

During World War 2, a crew was bulldozing through sedimentary rock when they discovered what appeared to be a graveyard. It included skulls that measured twenty-two to twenty-four inches from base to crown – nearly three times the size of an adult human skull.

In 1947, a local newspaper reported the discovery of nine-foot tall skeletons in Death Valley.

In addition to the double-rows of teeth, the giant skeletons also often have six fingers and six toes on each hand or foot. This, interestingly, lines up with the Bible's description of giants:

*“At Gath another battle took place. A huge man was there; he had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot – twenty-four fingers and toes*



*in all.* This man also was descended from the giants.”<sup>1</sup>

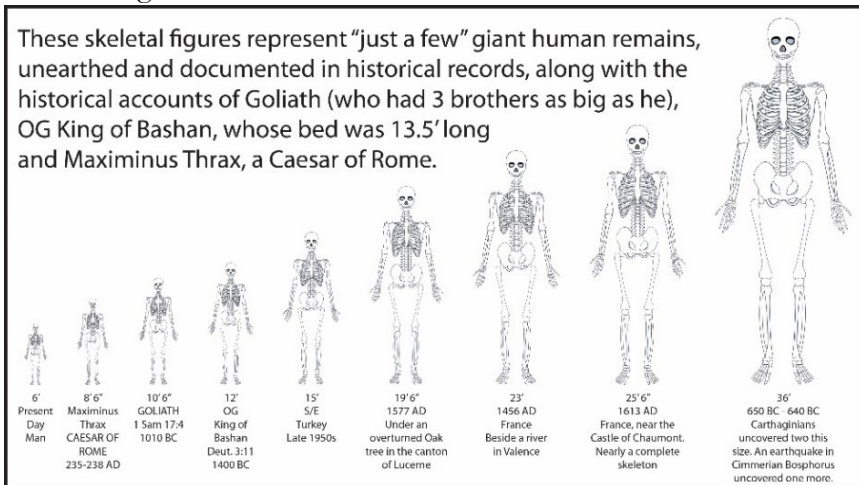
In a cave along the Illinois River, large human footprints were found which measured fourteen inches in length and had six toes instead of five.

In January of 1870, a Wisconsin newspaper reported that two giant well-preserved skeletons had been discovered by workers digging the foundation of a sawmill near the bank of the Mississippi River. One of the skeletons measured seven and half feet, the other eight feet. The skulls of each had prominent cheekbones and double rows of teeth.

During the time of all these discoveries, it is documented in the local newspapers that the Smithsonian took possession of nearly every giant skeleton found throughout the country. After taking the skeletons, the Smithsonian denied any knowledge of their existence.

The giants discovered in these locations are probably not first-generation giants. In other words, these were probably descendants of giants rather than the immediate children of the Watchers. The reason being that the giants in the Book of Enoch were described as being immensely tall – far taller than even ten to twenty feet.

However, there are stories from history of giants that have been discovered that match this description. Below is a chart which shows various giants to-scale. The fifth figure is where it starts to get interesting.



It may be hard to read, so here is what it says:

1. The figure on the far left is Present Day Man, sized at 6 feet tall.
2. The second figure is the reported size of Maximinus Thrax, the

<sup>1</sup> 2 Samuel 21:20

Caesar of Rome from 235-238 AD. He stood eight and a half feet tall.

3. The third figure is Goliath from the Bible, estimated to be about ten and a half feet tall.
4. The fourth figure is King Og from the Bible, estimated to be about twelve feet tall.
5. The fifth figure represents a giant skeleton that was discovered in Southeastern Turkey in the late 1950's. It stood fifteen feet tall.
6. The sixth figure represents a giant skeleton that was discovered in France in 1456. It stood twenty-three feet tall.
7. The seventh figure represents another skeleton found in France in 1613. It stood twenty-five and a half feet tall and was nearly a complete skeleton.
8. The eighth figure represents two skeletons found by the Carthaginians around 650BC – 640BC. One more was uncovered after an earthquake. They each stood thirty-six feet tall.

When you compare modern man on the far left to the giant on the far right, it becomes easy to understand what the Israelites said when they saw giants living in the land of Canaan. They said, “We seemed like grasshoppers in our own eyes, and we looked the same to them.”<sup>1</sup>

The Israelites felt like small insects compared to the size of the giants living in the land. This description doesn't make much sense if we think of the giants as all being the size of Goliath – standing only a few feet taller than them. But it makes a lot more sense when we see the size of the giant on the far right of this graph. The Israelites would have felt extremely small compared to them!

As we can see, there is a ton of evidence for giants. And all of this has barely scratched the surface. These giant remains have been found all around the world.

It is time that we start to recognize that there is a ton of archaeological evidence that backs up the stories told in the Bible, as well as the stories told in the Book of Enoch. The evidence is everywhere. Do not be deceived by the Smithsonian's attempts to cover up that evidence. The discoveries have been documented, as was the Smithsonian's confiscation of those discoveries.

Giants existed. It is a proven fact.

---

<sup>1</sup> Numbers 13:33



## NOTHING NEW UNDER THE SUN

In addition to giants, a big part of the story told in the Book of Enoch is that the Watchers began to teach mankind all sorts of secret knowledge. This part of the story is very difficult for people to wrap their minds around. Few people are even willing to consider the possibility that a culture existed in the ancient past which had advanced knowledge and technology.

It has been ingrained in us from our youth that mankind began as cavemen and advanced to our modern technological age. Not many people would even think it is possible that advanced technology has existed on earth before our time. Surely all the advanced technology in the world around us today is new. There's no way this has ever happened before... right?

We are going to look at very real physical evidence that proves there must have been some kind of ancient technology in the distant past. That evidence exists, and it is abundant! But, before we dive into this evidence, I want to point you to what the Bible has to say on the topic.

There is a passage in the Bible that many Christians do not believe is true. Of course, they would never say that, but through all their other beliefs about the world we live in, they prove that they do not believe this passage of the Bible is accurate and true. They hold the passage as divinely inspired Scripture, but they miss the incredible implications of what that passage said. Here is that passage:

“Whatever is will be again.  
Whatever has happened will happen again;  
There is nothing new under the sun.  
Here is a common expression:  
‘Look, this is new,’  
But it was already here long ago.  
It existed before our time.  
People don't remember what happened long ago,  
Nor will there be any remembrance of what will be in the  
future.  
Even later, other people will not remember what was done  
before them.”<sup>1</sup>

In these verses, Solomon said that there is nothing new under the

---

<sup>1</sup> Ecclesiastes 1:9-11

sun. He specifically said, “Here is a common expression: ‘Look, this is new,’ but it was already here long ago. It existed before our time. People don’t remember what happened long ago...”

In other words, if we ever begin to think that we see something that is new and has never happened before, we should remember that Scripture tells us that we are wrong. It has happened – people simply don’t remember it.

With that in mind, let me ask any of my Christian readers: Do you believe this is Scripture? Do you believe it was divinely inspired? Do you believe it is the Word of God? If so, do you look at cars, airplanes, computers, nuclear power, and other such modern things and assume that similar things must have existed before in the ancient past? If you don’t, then you do not believe this passage from Ecclesiastes is accurate and true.

According to Scripture, there will never be anything that happens on earth which has not happened before. People might think something is new, but the reality is that they have simply forgotten the truth about the past.

So then, why do we assume that we live in an age of newness? We can travel at high speeds – both on the ground and in the air. We have electricity, computers, and access to the internet. We have a growing understanding of nuclear power. We have weapons of mass destruction that can level entire cities. According to Scripture, none of these things are new! So, do we believe Scripture, or do we believe what we have been told about the history of the earth?

Think about these things.

## WHERE DID IT ALL GO?

Before we look at any of the evidence for ancient technology and advancement, there is one glaring question which we must get out of the way. I had this question myself for many years.

If there truly was ancient advanced technology including things like electricity, flying vehicles, or computers... where did it all go? Shouldn’t we see very clear evidence of that technology?

For example, if society got wiped out today, and thousands of years from now people began to dig up the ruins, wouldn’t they find cars, airplanes, computers, powerlines, and other very clear signs of technology? How can we say that the ancient world had similar things if we cannot find those things anywhere on earth? The only things

we have from the ancient world were all done with stone. That’s not very advanced!

This is a great question. Where did it all go? And this is exactly part of the problem. People don’t understand what we would expect to find if an ancient civilization truly did have all these same capabilities.

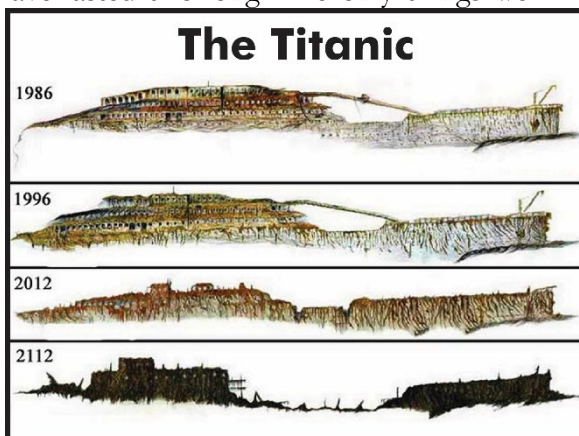
The reality is this – when we look at the ancient past, we wouldn’t expect to be able to find any of those things, even if they did have them! The only things that would have lasted this long are the things they did with stone – which is precisely what we find.

In the book, *Technology of the Gods*, David Hatcher Childress wrote, “One reason that we don’t have many iron or other metallic objects that are tens of thousands of years old is that such an object wouldn’t last that long. Most metals, such as iron, copper, bronze, and tin will corrode and oxidize into nothing. An iron nail, if exposed to water, will rust and disappear in a matter of a few years. This is why gold is particularly valuable - it is indestructible. All gold that ever existed in ancient times still exists today, as jewelry, coins, bullion, or whatever. Gold is too soft, however, to be used for weapons or machines, at least in its pure form.”<sup>1</sup>

In other words, when we consider the possibility of ancient technology, we need to get it out of our heads that we would expect to find power cables, cars, or airplanes lying around in the desert. Those items would not have lasted this long. The only things we should expect to find from an ancient advanced civilization are the things they did with stone.

Consider the Titanic. In just over 100 years underwater, more than fifty percent of the Titanic has corroded away into nothing – it’s disappearing!

Now, it’s true that things do erode faster underwater, but even when we look at abandoned cars or houses that are not maintained, we can see just



<sup>1</sup> *Technology of the Gods*, David Hatcher Childress, Adventures Unlimited Press, p.84

how fast things can erode.



In fact, it is theorized that if every human vanished from the earth today, the longest lasting structure would be the Hoover Dam – which they estimate will also fall apart in about ten thousand years.

So, to answer the original question, the answer is no - if society got wiped out today, and thousands of years from now people began to dig up the ruins, they would *not* find cars, airplanes, computers, powerlines, and other very clear signs of technology. Those things would all have long vanished. The only things left would be whatever we have done with stone – like the Hoover Dam.

The simple truth is that anything manmade will eventually disappear, except for things made out of stone. This is why, when we dig through ancient ruins, we only find things like the pyramids, the Sphinx, and Stonehenge. Everything else is gone.

So, we should not look for ancient powerlines, airplanes, cars, or computers. Those things would not be found today whether or not they existed thousands of years ago. The only things we should expect to find are things they did with stone.

## ANCIENT EGYPTIAN KNOWLEDGE

As mentioned in the last chapter, ancient Egypt was known for their advanced knowledge. The Egyptians were famous in the ancient world. They could build structures no one else could build. Their knowledge of medicine surpassed everyone else. They were relied upon for their historical records. They were far more advanced and sophisticated than any of the other ancient civilizations.

John Anthony West wrote, “Egyptian science, medicine, mathematics and astronomy were all of an exponentially higher order of refinement and sophistication than modern scholars will acknowledge. The whole of Egyptian civilization was based upon a complete and precise understanding of universal laws. And this profound understanding manifested itself in a consistent, coherent and interrelated system that fused science, art and religion into a single organic Unity. In other words, it was exactly the opposite of what we find in the world today.

“Moreover, every aspect of Egyptian knowledge seems to have been complete at the very beginning. The sciences, artistic and architectural techniques and hieroglyphic system show virtually no signs of a period of “development”; indeed, many of the achievements of the earliest dynasties were never surpassed, or even equaled later on. This astonishing fact is readily admitted by orthodox Egyptologists, but the magnitude of the mystery it poses is skillfully understated, while its many implications go unmentioned.

“How does a civilization spring full-blown into being? Look at a 1905 automobile and compare it to a modern one. There is no



mistaking the process of “development,” but in Egypt there are no parallels. Everything is right there at the start.”<sup>1</sup>

When we look back at ancient Egypt, which was far more advanced than anyone else at their time, it is clear that their knowledge of science, medicine, mathematics, and astronomy was far more advanced than modern scholars are willing to acknowledge. Yet, despite this, their knowledge of these things shows no sign of development.

In other words, the archaeological record seems to indicate that the Egyptians gained all this knowledge all at once. How is that possible? In our modern age, we consider ourselves to be highly advanced and knowledgeable – yet there is a clear history of the development of our knowledge. Our technology began at a very basic and simple level, and has progressed over time as we have learned new techniques, skills, and information.

But this is not the case when we look at ancient Egypt. There is no development. One day they had no advancement or technology, and the next day they did! What happened?

That knowledge must have come from somewhere. There is no other explanation for how the Egyptians could have become the most advanced civilization of the ancient world. Someone gave them their knowledge. So, who?

---

<sup>1</sup> Serpent in the Sky, John Anthony West, 1984. Harper & Row, NYC

The Book of Enoch tells us who. The Watchers came to earth and taught mankind all sorts of secrets. They gave mankind technology and information that had previously never been known.

## ANCIENT CHEMISTRY AND ELECTRICITY?

Once again, David Hatcher Childress wrote, “William Corliss reports in his *Science Frontiers* newsletter (No. 123, May-June 1999) that the ancient Egyptians not only had advanced toilets and bathrooms, but also applied cosmetics copiously to themselves. Upper-class women, as well as many men, favored green, white, and black makeup. These cosmetic powders, dating from 2000 BC, have been exceptionally well preserved in their original vials made of alabaster, wood or ceramic.

“A team of French chemists led by P. Walter was not surprised when their analyses of these powders found crushed galena and cerussite (two ores of lead). However, they nearly dropped their test tubes when they also found chemical compounds that are extremely rare in nature; specifically, laurionite ( $\text{PbOHCl}$ ) and phosgenite ( $\text{Pb}_2\text{Cl}_2\text{CO}_3$ ). In fact, these compounds are so rare naturally that the Egyptian powders must be artificial.

“P. Walter et. al. wrote: “Taken together, these results indicate that laurionite and phosgenite must have been synthesized in Ancient Egypt using wet chemistry. The Egyptians manufactured artificial lead-based compounds and added them to the cosmetic product.”<sup>1</sup>

There is evidence that the ancient Egyptians successfully manufactured artificial compounds using chemistry! This is something that mankind has supposedly only learned how to do in very recent history.

Furthermore, they produced these compounds for use in cosmetics – something the Book of Enoch directly says was taught by the Watchers.<sup>2</sup>

This is evidence that what the Book of Enoch said is true. The Egyptians had knowledge given to them which allowed them to create artificial compounds through chemistry to be used for

---

<sup>1</sup> Technology of the Gods, David Hatcher Childress, Adventures Unlimited Press, pp. 18-19

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 8:1

cosmetics. Our modern version of history tells us these things were impossible – yet the evidence is undeniable.

Furthermore, David Hatcher Childress continued, “In 1959 Communist Chinese archaeologists claimed that they had discovered ancient Chinese belt buckles in a tomb. They were several thousand years old, the newspaper accounts said, but, incredibly, they were made of aluminum. Aluminum is a curious metal because the smelting process from bauxite requires electricity!

“Aluminum is the most abundant metal on the planet, but requires electricity to create metal in a usable form. Indeed, the invention of aluminum extraction is of incalculable benefit to mankind, providing us the advanced metallurgy science that is necessary for inventions such as flight and space travel.

“The belt buckles discovered by the Chinese in 1959 make us wonder, were these artifacts made using electricity? The aluminum smelting process from bauxite requires electricity! French scientists studied the buckles and published their studies in 1961. They concluded that the ancient Chinese were making aluminum by an unknown process.”<sup>1</sup>

The very fact that aluminum belt buckles were discovered from thousands of years ago is proof that our history is wrong. These belt buckles prove that ancient mankind had working electricity. There is no other way to make aluminum.

The Book of Enoch tells us that the Watchers provided advanced knowledge to the ancient world, and here we have evidence that the ancient world had advanced knowledge – even electricity! This is huge! Yet, it is never mentioned in our textbooks. Why? Because they have willfully forgotten what happened long ago.

## ANCIENT FLIGHT

Potentially one of the hardest things to imagine is that those living in the ancient world had the ability to fly. We all know that flight was invented very recently – just over one hundred years ago! Flight is one of the defining aspects of our modern society. But again – according to the Bible, there is nothing new under the sun. So, what about flight? Is it possible that the Watchers even taught men how to fly?

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid, pp. 81-82

Once again turning to the book *Technology of the Gods*, David Hatcher Childress wrote, “The ancient *Mababharata* speaks of a vimana (an airship) as ‘an aerial chariot with the sides of iron and clad with wings.’ The *Ramayana* describes a vimana as a double-deck, circular (cylindrical) aircraft with portholes and a dome. It flew with the ‘speed of the wind’ and gave forth a ‘melodious sound’... Ancient Indian texts on vimanas are so numerous it would take at least one entire book to relate what they have to say. See, among others, *Vimana Aircraft of Ancient India & Atlantis* by [Childress, Sanderson, and Josyer]. The ancient Indians themselves wrote entire flight manuals on the care and control of various types of vimanas.

“The *Samara Sutradhara* is a scientific treatise dealing with every possible facet of air travel in a vimana. There are 230 stanzas dealing with construction, take-off, cruising for thousands of miles, normal and forced landings, and even possible collisions with birds. Would these texts exist (they do) without there being something to actually write about?

“The [*Vaimanika Sastra*] dealt with the operation of ancient vimanas and included information on steering, precautions for long flights, protection of the airships from storms and lightning, and how to switch the drive to solar energy, or some other “free energy” source... Vimanas were said to take off vertically, and were capable of hovering in the sky, like a modern helicopter...

“The ancient Indian epics go into considerable detail about aerial warfare over 10,000 years ago. So much detail that a famous Oxford professor included a chapter on the subject in a book on ancient warfare!

“According to Sanskrit scholar Ramachandra Dikshitar, the Oxford Professor who wrote *War in Ancient India* in 1944, ‘No question can be more interesting in the present circumstances of the world than India’s contribution to the science of aeronautics. There are numerous illustrations in our vast Puranic and epic literature to show how well and wonderfully the ancient Indians conquered the air.

““To glibly characterize everything found in this literature as imaginary and summarily dismiss it as unreal has been the practice of both Western and Eastern scholars until very recently. The very idea indeed was ridiculed and people went so far as to assert that it was physically impossible for man to use flying machines. But today what with balloons, aeroplanes and other flying machines, a great change has come over our ideas on the subject.”



“Commenting on the famous vimana text the *Vimanika Shastra*, he says: ‘In the recently published *Samarangana Sutradhara* of Bhoja, a whole chapter of about 230 stanzas is devoted to the principles of construction underlying the various flying machines and other engines used for military and other purposes. The various advantages of using machines, especially flying ones, are given elaborately.

“Special mention is made of their attacking visible as well as invisible objects, of their use at one’s will and pleasure, of their uninterrupted movements, of their strength and durability, in short of their capability to do in the air all that is done on earth.”<sup>1</sup>

Once again, there is an abundance of evidence for this advanced technology in the ancient world. For hundreds of years, these texts from ancient India were assumed to be fiction because no one knew how to fly. But now, since flight was discovered a hundred years ago, we know it is possible! Yet everyone has maintained their previously held notions that these ancient texts cannot possibly be true.

Why do we maintain those ideas? We know flight is possible now! Moreover, we now know that when we fly, we must take into account all of the same things that the ancient Indians wrote about!

There is nothing new under the sun! When we look up at the sky and see airplanes flying around, we need to remember that this is also not new. We have simply forgotten what happened long ago – just like Scripture said we would.

The ancient Indians were not writing myths. They were too detailed and too purposeful. They were instructions on how to use some kind of ancient aircraft. They taught how to fly, how to take off, how to land, how to steer, how to fly in various types of weather, how to avoid damage from birds, and many other things. There is no plausible explanation for these things to be written down unless there was some kind of real aircraft to write about.

We need to suspend our disbelief for a moment and honestly evaluate the evidence. This may contradict everything we have been taught our entire lives, but the evidence is there.

How did the ancient Indians learn all this knowledge about flight? They got the knowledge from their gods – from the Watchers. The Book of Enoch tells us who those beings were, and it tells us that they taught mankind advanced secrets. This evidence verifies that the Book of Enoch tells a true story.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid, pp. 167-169

## 2000 TONS LIFTED 20 FEET IN THE AIR

In addition to these small finds – like aluminum or some ancient texts, there is a much bigger piece of evidence that proves how advanced the ancient world once was.

Once again, I will allow David Hatcher Childress to elaborate. He said, “One of the most astonishing ancient ruins in the world is the megalithic base of Ba’albek, the pre-Roman ruins upon which a Roman-era temple sits...

“One part of the enclosure wall, called the *Trilithon*, is composed of three blocks of hewn stone that are the largest stone blocks ever used in construction on this planet, so far as is known (underwater ruins may reveal larger constructions). This is an engineering feat that has never been equaled in history.

“The weight and even size of the stones is open to controversy. According to the author Rene Noorbergen in his fascinating book *Secrets of the Lost Races*, the individual stones are 82 feet long and 15 feet thick and are estimated



to weigh between 1,200 and 1,500 tons each (a ton is 2,000 pounds, which would make the blocks weigh an estimated 2,400,000 to 3,000,000 pounds each). While Noorbergen’s size may be incorrect, his weight is probably closer to the truth. Even conservative estimates say that the stones weigh at least 750 tons each, which would be one and a half million pounds.

“It is an amazing feat of construction, for the blocks have been raised more than 20 feet in order to lie on top of smaller blocks. The colossal stones are fitted together perfectly, and not even a knife blade can be fitted between them...

“Noorbergen is correct in saying that there is no crane in the world that could lift any of these stones, no matter what their actual weight is. The largest cranes in the world are stationary cranes constructed at dams to lift huge concrete blocks into place. They can typically lift weights up to several hundred tons. 1,000 tons, and God

forbid, 2,000 tons are far beyond their capacity. How these blocks were moved and raised into position is beyond the comprehension of engineers...

“There is not a contractor today that would attempt to move or lift these stones. It is simply beyond our modern machine technology... If they had cut the stone into, say, 100 pieces, they would still be of unusually large size, larger than a man, but at least could have been stacked into a wall much more easily. One is left with the unsettling thought that the reason they used these huge stones was because they could use them - and do it relatively easily, though today we have no idea how.”<sup>1</sup>

Once again, this points back to what we mentioned earlier in this chapter. We may not be able to find ancient technology buried in the desert – because it would have corroded and vanished by now. But, we can see what they were able to do with that technology. It’s demonstrated in what they could do with stone.

Now, it should be noted that Childress and Noorbergen were both wrong about what modern cranes can lift. Modern stationary cranes are capable of lifting tens of thousands of tons. The strongest crane in the world is the Taisun crane in China. It is a stationary crane which can lift over twenty-thousand tons, or 44 million pounds. However, it is only capable of doing this because it is a stationary crane built with state-of-the-art technology.

Mobile cranes, which are used in construction, have a maximum load capacity of up to 1,200 tons. This is the bottom range of Noorbergen’s estimate for the weight of these stones. If the stones truly weigh more than this (they likely do), then they could not have been lifted with a modern mobile crane.

A mobile crane would have been needed for these stones because the stones were quarried nearly a kilometer away from the construction site, transported to the construction site (which would have required lifting them to some extent), then they were lifted twenty feet into the air and placed on top of other (also very large) stones. A stationary crane could not have done this.

But regardless, the point still stands – the fact that these stones exist where they currently do proves that someone in the ancient past was capable of doing something that was considered impossible until very recently. The only way we could possibly do what they did would be for us to use a modern state-of-the-art hydraulic stationary crane.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid, pp. 41-45

This means that whoever built the foundation at Ba'albek had technology equivalent to what we have today.

Once again, this proves that the ancient world was not what we have been told it was. They had knowledge and technology far beyond what we were taught. The evidence for this technology is clear and abundant.

## A WORLDWIDE CIVILIZATION

In addition to the stones at Ba'albek, there are megalithic ruins scattered across the entire world which proves that an ancient civilization once spanned the whole earth. The same building techniques were used in Mesopotamia, South America, Central America, and Japan.

This is only possible if there once existed a worldwide civilization much like we see today. Given the fact that those megalithic ruins are also constructed with highly technical skills, it would seem that the worldwide civilization possessed the knowledge of the Watchers.

Here is one last quote from David Hatcher Childress:

“Throughout the world, there exists a type of megalithic construction that is called “Atlantean” by those researchers who believe in advanced civilizations of the past. This is typically a type of construction which used gigantic blocks of stone, often crystalline granite. Huge blocks are fitted together without mortar in a polygonal style which tends to interlock the heavy blocks in a jigsaw fashion.



These interlocked polygonal walls resist earthquake damage by moving with the shock of the quake... Such “Atlantean style” construction can be found all over the world...

“Where then is Atlantis? Atlantis is all around us, asserted British scholar John Michell in his book *The View Over Atlantis*. Michell further showed that amazing ancient ruins are a worldwide phenomenon in his *Megalithomania*. Many authors have attempted to show how the worldwide distribution of megaliths points to an advanced civilization in an antediluvian sense, including such scholarly works as *Megaliths & Masterminds* by Peter Lancaster Brown.



“Their thesis was that the ancient world was remarkably advanced for its so-called Stone Age inheritance, and they argued that an advanced civilization called “Atlantis” preceded the dawn of history. The prehistoric civilization not only ranged worldwide but built impressive monuments and buildings as well.”<sup>1</sup>

We don’t know how they built these walls and structures. We can’t duplicate it today – it’s beyond our ability. This means, there once existed a civilization that spanned the whole world which had technology that we still don’t have.

In this section, he referenced Atlantis. We have all heard of Atlantis. We’ve been taught that Atlantis was a fictional city written about by the Greek writer named Plato. But here’s part of the problem – Plato went out of his way to state that the story of Atlantis was a true story. He wrote many things in his life, but he specifically stated that this part of the story was not fiction. He said, “Then listen, Socrates, to a tale which, though strange, is certainly true...”<sup>2</sup>

Plato wanted his readers to know that this story about Atlantis was true – even though it sounds like fiction! The story of Atlantis was that there was once an ancient advanced civilization which spanned the whole world. In addition to this, the Atlanteans were supposedly half-gods and half-humans.

This is the same story as the Book of Enoch! The children of the Watchers were half-Watcher, and half-human. They had advanced knowledge and built a civilization for hundreds of years which would have spanned the whole world. Moreover, the story of Atlantis ended

---

<sup>1</sup> Ibid, pp. 35-37

<sup>2</sup> Timaeus, by Plato

with a flood that wiped out the remainder of that civilization.

Atlantis is the story of the giants – the children of the Watchers – and the civilization that they built. We dismiss it today as fiction and fantasy, yet it is one of the only stories Plato bothered to say is true.

Though that civilization was wiped out, the evidence of that civilization can be found all across the world.

How can the same (extremely complicated) construction techniques be found in ancient ruins from Italy, Greece, Turkey, Egypt, Japan, Peru, and Easter Island (among many others)? Those locations are spread across vast distances and oceans. The history we were taught tells us that this is impossible, yet this is precisely what we see around the



world. The ancients built walls and other structures using complicated polygonal stones cut with an insane precision (more on that in a moment). It is a feat that cannot be duplicated today, yet it is found everywhere – not just in one isolated area, but across oceans and continents.

The ancients built walls and other structures using complicated polygonal stones cut with an insane precision (more on that in a moment). It is a feat that cannot be duplicated today, yet it is found everywhere – not just in one isolated area, but across oceans and continents.



The only way this is possible is if one civilization spanned the entire world. More than that – that civilization must have been extremely advanced. They were capable of doing things that we cannot do today.

Once again, many of those stone structures were built with massive stones which would require modern-day machinery to transport and lift. Yet many of those structures were built at the tops of mountains, and the stones used were brought from quarries in different mountains! How did they get them there? We don't know.

## EGYPTIAN ARCHITECTURE

Once again, we should return to the Egyptians. It is undeniable

how advanced the Egyptians were. Simply consider the pyramids. Any brief study on the pyramids reveals countless questions as to how the Egyptians constructed them – let alone what the actual purpose of the pyramids was. Guess what – despite everything taught in modern education, there is actually no indication whatsoever that the pyramids were ever meant to be tombs.

What were they meant for? That is a complicated question with lots of speculation involved and very few concrete answers. I will not touch on the subject for now. You can look it up on YouTube if you want.

However, as already mentioned, the polygonal stone structures found all around the world were cut to an insane level of accuracy. They were fitted together so perfectly that you cannot fit a knife blade or piece of paper between them. This same phenomenon is also found among the Trilithon stones at Ba'albek. But most notably, it is found everywhere in Egypt.



When we say that you cannot fit a razor blade or a piece of paper or even a human hair between the stones, we aren't kidding. Here is a photo taken of the seam where two stones meet in Egypt.

It is total precision. In many cases, it is so exact that you can't even notice it. It is so perfect it is difficult to capture on camera.

Yet, despite the extreme degree of difficulty in achieving a cut like this, it must have been easy for the ancient people of the world to do this, because they did it everywhere! In Egypt alone, this is how the stones are fitted together throughout the temples, inside the pyramids, along the walkways outside, and along the roofs of buildings.

These are not small stones either – these are large granite blocks weighing over 30 to 50 tons a piece – some much more. Each block is significantly larger than a man. To achieve a cut like this would have required a degree of precision only attainable by modern machines and highly precise technology.



Yet, the official story given to us is that the Egyptians did all of this by hand with bronze chisels and saws. They have only found bronze hand tools, so they assume no other technology ever existed, and that this must be how the Egyptians constructed everything they did.

There are a few problems with this. First – bronze has a Mohs hardness rating of 3. The granite they carved has a Mohs hardness rating of 7. This means that granite would have easily cut through bronze, and bronze would never have cut through granite. It's impossible!

Second – despite the drawings seen in all our history textbooks, there have actually never been found any hieroglyphs which depicted Egyptians cutting or carving any stones whatsoever. They didn't document how it was done, which means everything taught in mainstream history about it is nothing more than speculation.

Third – when Egyptologists have attempted to carve these massive stones using the bronze tools, they found that the bronze tools broke without scratching the surface of the granite (see my first point). So, they began to combine sand with the saws so the sand would do the actual cutting. They managed to cut a few inches into the stone over the course of a few days. However, in order to meet the mainstream timeline for the construction of the Great Pyramid of Giza (which they claim took 20 years), one stone block would have to have been cut, carved, and moved into place every few minutes. That is not possible if they could only cut a few inches in the span of a few days.

In addition to all of this, there are 118 known pyramids in Egypt, dozens of temples, countless flooring stones surrounding those temples, hundreds of mastabas, a myriad of columns, numerous gigantic obelisks, many stone boxes, hundreds of sarcophagi, thousands of statues, and innumerable other various objects all carved from stone. It is physically impossible that all of this was done using nothing but bronze chisels and saws.

Keep in mind that many of the people who propose these alleged



methods have never even been to Egypt themselves, nor have they ever actually tried to cut stone blocks using those primitive methods. The few who have tried have all given up and no one has ever finished one single stone block. Yet the Egyptians cut well over 100 million stone blocks used throughout all their structures, flooring, roofs, pyramids, and temples.

More than all of this, we can also see that same level of precision cutting done throughout the rest of the world in the megalithic ruins left to us by an ancient forgotten culture.

The history we are taught is a lie. It is not the truth. It is not even possible that it could be the truth. Science has covered up reality because they made a choice to willfully forget about creation and the flood. This choice forced their hand as they then were required to willfully forget about the ancient culture that was destroyed by the flood.

## ANCIENT NUCLEAR WAR

Finally, the last part of Enoch's story was that the children of the Watchers – the giants – began to fight one another until they had completely slaughtered each other.

When we read this story, we need to remember all of the evidence we have already seen. The giants clearly had advanced technology – at least on par with what we are capable of doing today. They also had a worldwide civilization which has left megalithic ruins scattered across the world which all bear the same similarities.

This means the war they fought with one another would have been worldwide and cataclysmic. We are not talking about spears and swords. We are talking about people with the same capabilities as us. If a war occurred today that wiped out our own worldwide civilization, what would that war look like?

As we saw in the last chapter, the ancient Indian epic known as the *Mahabharata* told the story of an event which accurately described a nuclear weapon and the radiation caused by that nuclear weapon.

Is it possible that the Watchers brought nuclear weapons to earth in the distant past? Is it possible that those weapons were used? If so, there would be undeniable evidence. And there is.

In the early morning hours of July 16, 1945, the first atomic bomb was successfully detonated in the New Mexico desert. This was the Trinity test – the culmination of the infamous Manhattan Project

started by President Roosevelt in 1942. The test ended the race between the United States, Germany, and the Soviet Union to develop nuclear weapons. A few weeks later, with the attacks on Hiroshima and Nagasaki, these new bombs ended World War 2.

After the Trinity test, scientists were surprised to find that the rough New Mexico sand had been turned into a smooth sheet of shimmering green glass. This meant that the bomb had produced temperatures of over 3000 degrees Fahrenheit. At first it was assumed that they had created a brand new material found nowhere else on earth.



However, shortly after the test, one scientist, Albion W. Hart, upon examining the glass, remembered something similar he had seen in Africa over a decade earlier.

In 1932, Albion had been driving through the deserts of Egypt when he noticed a strange crunching sound coming from beneath the vehicle. He had stopped to see what was happening, and discovered that the entire desert valley was covered with a giant sheet of green glass.

No one knew what could possibly have turned the entire valley into glass. Yet it was not an isolated event. Archaeologists digging in the Euphrates River Valley had also discovered a layer of fused green glass. Similar glass was also found in the Gobi Desert of Mongolia. More was found along the ancient Silk Road in China. Even more glass was later found in Israel in 1952. In Libya, an area 2500 square miles in size is covered with the same fused green glass.

Prior to the Manhattan Project, no one could imagine the type of force and energy required to turn an entire valley of sand into glass. Is it possible that these green glass valleys found throughout the world were created by ancient nuclear weapons?

That thought may seem strange to us, but it was not so strange to Dr. J. Robert Oppenheimer – director of the Trinity Test and creator of the nuclear bomb. Seven years after the test, he was asked by one of his students if the Trinity Test was in fact the first atomic bomb ever detonated on earth. He answered, “Yes... in modern times.”

Dr. Oppenheimer was far more educated and far more intelligent than the average person. Yet he was able to recognize the weapon he had created. It was described in ancient Indian texts which had documented an ancient war, and the evidence for that war was beginning to be found all throughout the world.

That evidence was not limited to the valleys of vitrified glass. In the 1970s, France was searching for uranium in West Africa to fuel their nuclear power plants back home. As they searched, they managed to find a number of uranium deposits. But there was something strange – the uranium deposits were arranged in a straight and tidy row.

As if this apparent coincidence was not strange enough, French scientists were shocked when they removed the uranium and sent it for testing. The uranium they had pulled out of the ground did not have the makeup of raw uranium as it should have. It had already been used. It even contained certain elements which are not naturally occurring, and are only found in used uranium from nuclear power plants.

The evidence seemed to indicate that someone in the very distant past had used the uranium and disposed of it in neatly arranged rows.

Furthermore, in 1927, ruins were unearthed in Mohenjo-Daro in Pakistan. They were the ruins of an ancient city. However, unlike most ruins, this city had experienced something horrific. At what appeared to be an epicenter of some ancient tragic event, the ruins were fused together and crystallized into glass. Forty-four human skeletons were found lying in the streets. Many of them were holding hands as if they had been suddenly and unexpectedly killed – much like can be seen in Pompeii after the eruption of Mount Vesuvius.

But there is no volcano anywhere near Mohenjo-Daro. So, what caused the sudden deaths and melted stone together, fusing it into glass?

The answer to that question can be found in the skeletons. Scientists wondered why the bones had not decayed for many thousands of years. Upon testing, they discovered that the bones had fifty times the radiation level that they should have had.

This strange occurrence was also not isolated. In Jodhpur, on the edge of the Thar Desert in India, while excavating for a housing project, workers uncovered a layer of radioactive dust consistent with what is found in areas after a nuclear detonation. The entire area has since been quarantined, as it is unsafe to enter.

As we saw in the last chapter, ancient Indian texts including the *Bhagavad Gita*, the *Mahabharata*, and the *Drona Parva* all told numerous accounts of weapons that had been used by gods. Those weapons were described in detail, and sound very much like modern day nuclear bombs.

One such weapon caused “crowds of warriors with steeds and elephants and weapons to be carried away as if they were dry leaves of trees.” Another weapon was described as “an incandescent column of smoke and flame as bright as ten thousand suns.”



The most powerful weapon was known as the *Brahmāstra*: “a single projectile charged with all the power in the universe. It was an unknown weapon, an iron thunderbolt, a gigantic messenger of death which reduced to ashes an entire race. There was neither a counter-attack nor a defense that could stop it... Hair and nails fell out; pottery broke without any apparent cause, and the birds turned white. After a few hours, all foodstuffs were infected. Any target hit by the *Brahmāstra* would be utterly destroyed; land would become barren and lifeless, rainfall would cease, and infertility in humans and animals would follow for eons of time.”

These are all perfect descriptions of nuclear weapons and the effects of radiation. How did the ancient Indians write such accurate descriptions unless they had something specific to write about? And, why are there so many valleys of fused sand and radioactive material – specifically throughout India?

I know this is a crazy concept to try to wrap our minds around. But there is actual evidence – very strange evidence – which points to the possibility of a nuclear war in the ancient past. Suspend your disbelief for a moment and just investigate the evidence!

Many of these pieces of evidence were found prior to our own knowledge of nuclear weapons. These things were found and couldn't be explained because no one knew what could cause the things they were seeing. The dismissed the stories from India for similar reasons – it seemed absurd! But now we know what can do those things! The descriptions and the evidence fit together perfectly and all point in the same direction.

We can see from all the evidence we've looked at that there must have been some kind of advanced civilization in the ancient past. We know they must have had some degree of high technology. And we know the Book of Enoch tells us that angels from heaven rebelled against God, stole knowledge from heaven, and taught that knowledge to mankind. We know it ended in a war.

The evidence fits the story.

## CONCLUSION

This has been a long chapter. There are many other pieces of evidence I wanted to include, but it was impractical to cover all of them. There are entire YouTube channels on this topic. Entire books have been written. People have dedicated their whole lives to research these things. There is simply too much to include in this one chapter.

But I hope I have managed to whet your appetite – or at least open your eyes enough to recognize that there may be more to history than meets the eye.

All of this evidence confirms the story told in the Book of Enoch. It is a strange story for us to read today because it sounds like fantasy or fiction. But there is very real evidence in our world to confirm this strange story.

This is why, even though the story is weird, Jesus and the apostles confirmed that it is true. We should already believe in the Book of Enoch simply because Jesus and the apostles believed in it, and they are a true authority. But, in addition to that, there is also an abundance of evidence.

Mainstream science has chosen to willfully forget what happened long ago. Don't get caught up in their willful forgetfulness. They are choosing to ignore the evidence while telling you that they are following it. They have built a house of cards. That house of cards is going to fall.

# ELEVEN

## So... Now What?

**T**he Book of Enoch is Scripture. It was directly quoted by Jude – who also called it prophecy. Peter told us that all true prophecy comes from God. It is breathed out by God through the Holy Spirit, which is exactly what Paul said Scripture is. Therefore, if the Book of Enoch is prophesy, as Jude said it is, then it is also Scripture.

More than this, Jesus himself directly said the Book of Enoch is Scripture. He told the Sadducees that they did not understand what they were talking about because they did not know the Scriptures, and then he immediately taught from the Book of Enoch.

Additionally, we have seen that the apostles and Jesus referenced the Book of Enoch on countless occasions. They quoted it, alluded to it, taught from it, and were informed by it. Also, their prophetic visions matched what Enoch had previously said.

All of this demonstrates how important the Book of Enoch was for the early Church, the apostles, and Jesus. They all considered this book to be Scripture and used it just as they did any other book from the Old Testament. Therefore, the Book of Enoch must be Scripture.

This brings us to a much larger point that we should take away from all of this. In order to show the significance of this point, let's look at something stated within the Book of Enoch.

At the very beginning of the Book of Enoch, he said, "The words of the blessing of Enoch, with which he blessed the elect and righteous who will be living in the day of tribulation, when all the wicked and godless are to be removed. And he took up his parable and spoke – Enoch, a righteous man whose eyes were opened by God, saw the vision of the Holy One in the heavens, which the angels showed me, and from them I heard everything, and from them I understood as I saw, but not for this generation, but for a remote one which is to come."<sup>1</sup>

In other words, Enoch said that the book he wrote was not for the people living at his own time – it was for a future generation – the people living in the day of tribulation. That's how he began his book – the very first few sentences.

Toward the end of his book, he said, "And now I know this mystery – that sinners will alter and pervert the words of righteousness in many ways, and will speak wicked words, and lie, and practice great deceits, and write books concerning their words. But when they write down truthfully all my words in their languages, and do not change or diminish from my words but write them all down truthfully, all that I first testified concerning them – then, I know another mystery – that books will be given to the righteous and the wise to become a cause of joy and uprightness and much wisdom. And to them will the books be given, and they will believe in them and rejoice over them, and then will all the righteous who have learnt therefrom all the paths of uprightness be recompensed."<sup>2</sup>

Enoch not only said that his book was written for a future generation, but he also said that he knew people would change the words of righteousness – they would alter and pervert the words of righteousness in many ways. This means that according to the Book of Enoch, the Bible has been altered and perverted in many ways. For example, the Book of Enoch was not included in it!

---

<sup>1</sup> 1 Enoch 1:1-2

<sup>2</sup> 1 Enoch 104:10-13

Enoch said that we should expect this. It is not a surprise. This is the opposite of what the church teaches today. They teach that God has protected his word and has kept it from being perverted or altered. Enoch said the opposite. He said that we should expect that men would change and alter Scripture. We have already seen that this is the case. We've seen that men decided to remove the Book of Enoch from Scripture.

However, Enoch did not leave it there. He said that a time would come when his words (the Book of Enoch) would be written down truthfully. He said his words would be translated into the languages of the world.

This is exactly what has happened! The Book of Enoch was lost for hundreds of years. It was excluded from Scripture for nearly two thousand years. The words of righteousness were altered! They were distorted and perverted – just like Enoch said! But then it was rediscovered. It was found in Ethiopia, and then found in the Dead Sea Scrolls. And now, in very recent history, it has been translated into the languages of the world and it has been given back to the people.

This is precisely what Enoch prophesied. His words were written for a future generation – us! His prediction of the future was spot-on. This is yet more proof that his words are true Scripture.

However, after he said this, he then stated that when his words are translated and given back to people, “then I know another mystery – that books will be given to the righteous and the wise to become a cause of joy and uprightness and much wisdom. And to them will the books be given, and they will believe in them and rejoice over them...”

According to Enoch, once his words are given back to people (which has only very recently been fulfilled), then the righteous will also receive other books.

What other books?

This brings us to a much larger point: We can clearly see that the Book of Enoch belongs in Scripture even though men have told us that there are no other books which belong in the Bible. Enoch clearly does! Therefore, we must begin to reevaluate some of the other books as well.

Our entire idea of the canon of Scripture is built on men's traditions. Men chose which books belong in the Bible and which ones do not. Whenever I have heard someone question the canon of Scripture, the best answer any of the scholars or Christian leaders can



give always boils down to the same thing: “Trust us.”

They tell us that God has preserved his Word. But the Bible does not no one will ever add or remove from Scripture. In fact, it implies the opposite. In the Book of Revelation, it says, “If anyone adds anything to these words, God will add to that person the plagues written about in this book. And if anyone takes away from the words of this book of prophecy, God will take away that one’s share of the tree of life and of the holy city, which are written about in this book.”<sup>1</sup>

The implication is that some people would come who would add or remove from the book! The idea that God preserves his Word (in the sense that they mean it) is not based on Scripture. Scripture does not promise that God will keep the canon of Scripture from being altered or perverted. God does preserve his word in the sense that it still exists thousands of years later! Yes, it’s preserved! But it never claims that men will be unable to distort it, or that the correct canon of Scripture will always be used.

In fact, if it promised that the correct canon of Scripture would always be used, then we have a big problem. The Protestants have a different canon than the Catholics, who have a different canon than the Ethiopians, who have a different canon than the Greek Orthodox. If God preserves the canon of Scripture, then who did he do it for? And how do you know that your canon is the correct canon?

These are the sort of questions we should ask ourselves because what the church teaches about the canon of Scripture does not make any sense! The argument that God preserves his Word falls short, because it would mean that God has preserved his Word for some people, but not for others – which would mean you can have no confidence at all that you are in the correct group.

As one coming from a Protestant background, I want to specifically address Protestants. So for those of you who are Protestant, or who use the Protestant Bible – do you know that there are many books that are not included in your Bible which were in the Bible for thousands of years? The Protestant canon was developed very recently – that is an historical fact.

Not only were those books in the Catholic Bible, but they were in the Septuagint! Do you even know this? I didn’t! I had no idea that there were books that were in the Septuagint, considered as Scripture at the time of Jesus, used as the Bible by the early Church and the

---

<sup>1</sup> Revelation 22:18-19

apostles, which were then later removed by Martin Luther and the reformers! I didn't know that! It's not what I was taught. Yet, it's the truth.

Have you ever heard of the books of the Maccabees? I always thought those were Catholic books. That's what I was taught. I was told the Catholics had a bunch of extra books in their Bibles which are not truly Scripture. The books of the Maccabees were one of the prime examples. Clearly the books of the Maccabees were Catholic books!

But they're not! They're ancient Jewish books that were included in the Septuagint hundreds of years before Jesus! They are in the Catholic Bible simply because the Catholics were not brazen enough to remove them from Scripture like the Protestants!

There are other books which were included in the Septuagint: First Maccabees, Second Maccabees, Third Maccabees, Fourth Maccabees, Tobit, Judith, Wisdom of Solomon, Sirach, and others. These are not Catholic books! These are ancient Jewish Scriptures. They were considered Scripture at the time of Jesus. They were in the Septuagint, and the Septuagint was the "Bible" used by the early Church, including the apostles!

More than that, the books in the Septuagint are not the only ones which were considered Scripture. As explained at the beginning of this book, the canon of Scripture was not established until well after Jesus. Different sects of Judaism had different beliefs about which books were Scripture and which ones weren't. So, we should look to Jesus and the apostles as our reference point. What did they consider to be Scripture?

We can clearly see that they taught from the Book of Enoch and considered it as Scripture. Yet it was not included in the Septuagint.

These are the sort of questions we should be willing to ask. We should be people who think. We should recognize the difference between men's traditions and biblical truth. There is not a single place in the entire Bible which tells us what books belong in Scripture and what books do not. Therefore, it is not a biblical truth.

Enoch told us that when his words are translated and given back to people, then the righteous will receive other books as well. They will accept those books with gladness, learn from them, and gain wisdom. Why? Because the Book of Enoch is the key. It was obviously regarded as Scripture by Jesus and the apostles. The case is overwhelming. When you recognize this, then you should start asking about all the other books that have been removed as well. The Book

of Enoch is the clearest example which proves that the canon of Scripture is tradition from men. Once you recognize it, the door has been opened for you to receive back the other books which men removed from Scripture. And they will give you gladness, you can learn from them, and you will gain wisdom from them.

## TIME TO REEVALUATE

To be clear – I do not claim that all of the Apocrypha books are Scripture. No, I do not claim that, especially when it comes to the New Testament Apocrypha. The New Testament Apocrypha has books such as the Gospel of Thomas, which tells a story of Jesus losing his temper and killing people. That’s not Scripture.

The New Testament Apocrypha includes many books which, even at their own time, were known to be fraudulent. There was a group known as the Gnostics who wrote a bunch of fraudulent books as a way to try to give themselves some credibility.

So, when it comes to the New Testament, I encourage you to exercise much discernment. Does it mean you cannot read those books to see if they have any credibility? No, you can read them. But don’t automatically assume they are Scripture. I have yet to find any New Testament Apocrypha book that has convinced me it is Scripture. Granted, I also have not read them all. But the point still stands – take them with a big grain of salt.

However, when it comes to the Old Testament Apocrypha, there are many references throughout the New Testament to books which have since been removed from Scripture. Most people do not know this simply because they do not read those books.

When Jesus spoke about the “Abomination of Desolation, which Daniel the prophet spoke about,”<sup>1</sup> it says, “Let the reader understand.” Why would the reader understand? Most Christians I know still have no idea what he was talking about. Well, that’s because the “abomination of desolation” referred to an event which had already occurred and was written about in the books of the Maccabees. That’s why the readers were expected to understand! If you understand the Book of First Maccabees, then you would understand what the abomination of desolation is (and no, it is not a pig sacrificed on the altar). If you knew the story, then you would

---

<sup>1</sup> Matthew 24:15

know what Jesus said to watch for.

However, many Christians today don't read the Book of First Maccabees, which makes it so they don't know what the abomination of desolation is.

There are many other examples where the New Testament clearly referenced something from the Old Testament Apocrypha.

For example, there is a book known as Second Esdras, which is also sometimes called Fourth Esdras. *Esdras* is simply the Greek form of the name *Ezra*, who was a real person in the Old Testament. Compare what this book said to what Jesus said:

**Matthew 7:13-14**

“Enter through the narrow gate. The gate is wide and the road is wide that leads to destruction, and many people enter through that gate. But **the gate is small and the road is narrow that leads to true life. Only a few people find that road.**”

**Luke 13:24**

“**Try hard to enter through the narrow door,** because many people will try to enter there, but they will not be able.”

**2 Esdras 7:6-10**

““There is a city built and set in a plain country, and full of all good things; but **the entrance thereof is narrow, and is set in a dangerous place to fall, having a fire on the right hand, and on the left a deep water; and there is only one path between them both, even between the fire and the water, so small that there could but one man go there at once.** If this city now be given to a man for an inheritance, **if the heir pass not the danger before him, how will he receive his inheritance?**”

“And I said, ‘It is so, Lord.’ Then he said to me, **‘Even so also is Israel’s portion.’**”

Here is another example from the same book:

**Matthew 23:37-39**

“Jerusalem, Jerusalem! **You kill the prophets and stone to death those who are sent to you. How often I wanted to gather your children as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings,** but you refused. **Now look, your house is desolate.** For I tell you, you will not see me again until that time when you will say, ‘Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord.’”

**2 Esdras 1:30-33**

“**I gathered you together, as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings;** but now, what will I do to you? I will cast you out from my presence. When you offer oblations to me, I will turn my face from you; for your solemn feast days, your new moons, and your circumcisions of the flesh, have I rejected. **I sent to you my servants the prophets, whom you have taken and slain, and torn their bodies in pieces, whose blood I will require of your hands,**’ says the

Lord. The Lord Almighty says, **‘Your house is desolate,** I will cast you out as the wind does stubble.’”

We can clearly see the similarities between these passages. Jesus not only used identical phrases, but he hit on the same topics as the original passage he referenced. Below is another example from the Book of Jubilees:

**Romans 2:28-29**

“...a person is not a true Jew if he is only a Jew by physical appearance; true circumcision is not only on the outside of the body. A person is a Jew only if he is a Jew inwardly; **true circumcision is done in the heart by the Spirit,** not by the written law.”

**Colossians 2:11**

**“In Christ you were also circumcised,** but not with a circumcision done by hands. **It was a circumcision done by Christ, which cut away the body of flesh.”**

**Romans 8:15**

**“...you received the Spirit who adopts you as God’s children.** Through that Spirit we cry out, ‘Abba, Father.’”

**Jubilees 1:23-25**

“And after this they will turn to me in all uprightness and with all their heart and with all their soul, and **I shall circumcise the foreskin of their heart and the foreskin of the heart of their seed, and I shall create in them a holy spirit,** and I shall cleanse them so that they shall not turn away from me from that day unto eternity. And their souls will cleave to me and to all my commandments, and they will fulfill my commandments, and **I shall be their Father and they will be my children. And they will all be called children of the living God,** and every angel and every spirit will know, yea, they will know that **these are my children, and that I am their Father** in uprightness and righteousness, and that I love them.”

Jubilees is yet another book that was found in the Dead Sea Scrolls. It is known to predate Jesus. Yet it prophesied the very things the apostles taught throughout the New Testament.

Another example can be found in the Testament of Levi. The Testament of Levi is part of a larger book known as The Testament of the Twelve Patriarchs. It is too much for me to quote here, but in the Testament of Levi, it tells the story of Levi being taken up into heaven. It describes him passing through the first heaven, into the second heaven, and up into the third heaven. This is similar to what Paul wrote when he said, “I know a man in Christ who was taken up to the third heaven fourteen years ago.”<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 2 Corinthians 12:2

What is the third heaven? The Testament of Levi explained these things, as did many other apocryphal books. The Testament of the Twelve Patriarchs is another example of a book which was found among the Dead Sea Scrolls.

In The Life of Adam and Eve, sometimes simply called The Book of Adam and Eve, it also contained information which was referenced in the New Testament:

**2 Corinthians 11:14**

“Even **Satan disguises himself as an angel of light.**”

**Adam and Eve 9:1**

“Eighteen days went by. **Then Satan was angry and transformed himself into the brightness of angels** and went away to the Tigris River to Eve and found her weeping.”

Where did Paul get this idea that Satan disguises himself as an angel of light? That isn't found in our Old Testament. But it is found in the Book of Adam and Eve.

Another connection can be seen in The Ascension of Isaiah, also known as The Martyrdom of Isaiah:

**Ascension of Isaiah 5:11-15**

“Belial was angry with Isaiah, and he dwelt in the heart of Manasseh, and **he sawed him apart with a wooden saw. And when Isaiah was being sawn apart,** Belchira stood up, accusing him, and all the false prophets stood up, laughing and rejoicing because of Isaiah... **And when Isaiah was being sawn apart, he neither cried aloud nor wept, but his lips spoke with the Holy Spirit until he was sawn in half.**”

**Hebrews 11:37**

“Some were laughed at and beaten. Others were put in chains and thrown into prison. They were stoned to death, **they were sawn in half,** and they were killed with swords...”

Another example can be found in The Wisdom of Solomon:

**Romans 9:19-21**

“A molded thing should not ask the molder, ‘Why did you make me like this?’ **Doesn't the potter have authority over the clay? He can use the same lump to make one thing for honorable use and another thing for common use.**”

**Wisdom of Solomon 15:7**

“For a potter, kneading soft earth, laboriously molds each article for our service. **He fashions out of the same clay both the vessels that minister to clean uses, and those of a contrary sort, all in like manner. What will be the use of each article**

of either sort, the potter is the judge.”

Yet another example can be found in Sirach:

**James 1:5-8**

“But **if any of you lacks wisdom**, you should ask God for it. He is generous to everyone and will give you wisdom without finding fault. **But when you ask God, you must ask with faith** and not indecision. Anyone who is indecisive is like a wave in the sea, driven and tossed by the wind. **Such doubters are double-minded, and they are unstable in all they do. They should not expect they will receive anything from the Lord.**”

**Sirach 1:26-28**

“**If you desire wisdom**, keep the commandments and the Lord will give her to you freely; for the fear of the Lord is wisdom and instruction. **Faith and humility are his good pleasure.** Don’t disobey the fear of the Lord. **Don’t come to him with a double heart.**”

Another example from Sirach:

**Romans 12:15**

“Rejoice with those who rejoice, and **weep with those who weep.**”

**Sirach 7:34**

“Don’t be lacking to those who weep and **mourn with those who mourn.**”

In addition to these examples, we could also look at what is known as *The Additions to Esther*. *The Additions to Esther* are simply sections of the Book of Esther which were included in the Septuagint, but not in our traditional Bibles. These additions bring a lot of clarity to what was happening in the story of Esther. Our traditional version of the Book of Esther does not mention God a single time – very strange. But the *Additions to Esther* mention God many times and demonstrate that Esther was a God-fearing woman who did not want to be queen. It makes much more sense than the romantic love story many Christians seem to think it is.

There are many other examples we could highlight. It is impractical to show them all here. The point is this: The New Testament draws from many other books which are not included in our Old Testament. The Book of Enoch is the clearest example of this because it was used the most, it was called prophecy, and it was called Scripture.

The Book of Enoch is our wake-up call. The same men who told

us that the Book of Enoch is not Scripture also told us that these other books are not Scripture as well. The Book of Enoch shows us plainly that they are wrong. It is time to start reevaluating everything else those men told us.

The Book of Enoch has been translated into our language. As a result, we can now receive numerous other books as well. Just as Enoch prophesied.

## WHERE CAN I READ THESE BOOKS?

The books that have been removed from the Bible are typically labeled by scholars in one of two categories. They are either called the *Apocrypha* or the *Pseudepigrapha*. Those are both big, scary words. They are just names assigned by the scholars. Don't get too concerned about the names. The word *Apocrypha* simply means *that which is hidden*. And the word *Pseudepigrapha* means *false author*. The scholars assigned these names because that is what the scholars think about these books. For example, the Book of Enoch is considered part of the Pseudepigrapha. Why? Because the scholars decided they don't think Enoch actually wrote it – therefore, they labeled it *false author*. However, we can clearly see that Jesus and the apostles **did** think Enoch actually wrote it. Therefore, the scholars are wrong. So – don't get too caught up in their labels.

The simple fact is this: the only reason any of these books are not included in the Bible is because men decided not to include them. You should not blindly trust them. Investigate these things for yourself.

As you do so, you might want to know where you can read these books. I will put forward a few recommendations.

First, the Book of Enoch which I have referenced throughout this book is the translation put together by Covenant Christian Coalition. I found it on Amazon, and it is a fairly good copy. It is called *The Complete Apocrypha*. However, the name is a bit misleading since it is not complete – there are a number of books which were not included.



This version also includes many books which I do not at all consider to be Scripture – especially toward the end of the book which includes *The Apostolic Fathers* and various other New Testament



era writings.

It also includes Second Enoch, which was not written by Enoch and contradicts First Enoch. It also includes Third Enoch, which doesn't even claim to be written by Enoch – it was written by some Jewish Rabbi many centuries after Jesus. In addition to this, it includes certain elements in some of the books (such as *The Ascension of Isaiah*) which were clearly added to the book later on.

So – there is a lot to sort through. All of this requires you to use some discernment.

The Book of Enoch can also be found in the *Hermeneia Translation*. This translation, put together by George W. E. Nickelsburg and James C. VanderKam is a much more accurate translation, but can also be a bit more difficult to read. They also arbitrarily decided that the original text is out of order, so they rearranged some of it. Such is the arrogance of scholars. But at least it's all there – it's just in a new order, and they at least labeled it so you can recognize when they changed the order of things.



Additionally, you can find the Book of Enoch, as well as most other Apocrypha or Pseudepigrapha books in the massive two-part collection translated and compiled by R.H. Charles. These very large books are considered to be one of the best collections of the apocryphal/pseudepigraphal books in existence. The only downside is that this translation was done a long time ago, and the English is very outdated, which makes it a challenge to read.



You could also pick up a copy of *The Dead Sea Scrolls in English*. There is much to read within those books – though not all of it is Scripture. There are many parts of it which pertained to their community – their rules and other stuff like that. It is a very fascinating read, and though it only contains fragments, you can see how many apocryphal books were found among those scrolls, which is a great indication of which books may or may not have been considered Scripture at their time. And, at the very least, it indicates which books definitely pre-date Jesus.



The list goes on! Additionally, you could easily get a copy of the Septuagint. There are numerous translations available. Not every translation chose to include the Apocrypha (even though those books were part of the Septuagint), however if you find a copy that does include them, you will find books such as the *Maccabees*, *Additions to Esther*, *Additions to Daniel*, *Judith*, *Tobit*, *The Prayer of Manasses*, *Wisdom of Solomon*, *Sirach*, *Psalms of Solomon*, *Baruch*, and the *Letter of Jeremiah* (which is different than the *Book of Jeremiah* which we have in the Old Testament). Personally, I am a fan of *The New English Translation of the Septuagint*. It includes the Apocrypha, and is fairly easy to read (most of the time).



Additionally, all of these books are free to read online. Just do a quick search for them. There is also a great interlinear version of the Book of Enoch, which I have found very helpful. It is a bit challenging to read, and I have found works best on a computer (rather than a phone), but it is a great resource.

## BE A BEREAN

In the Book of Acts, Paul went to the city of Berea to preach the

gospel.<sup>1</sup> In Berea, he preached to people who had never heard his message before. But, instead of just dismissing him, they searched the Scriptures to see if what he said was true. As a result, many of them were saved.

We should be like them. The Bereans were willing to consider something and think about it. They were not stuck in their previously held beliefs. They did not just reject Paul simply because he contradicted what they thought to be true. They wanted to know the truth, so they investigated it for themselves.

Do I claim that every book in the Apocrypha or Pseudepigrapha is Scripture? No, not at all. There are many books which contradict Scripture or don't line up in some other way. This does not mean we should ignore all of them! We should be Bereans – we should search through them to see what is true and what is not.

We need to know the truth. We need to know it for ourselves instead of just following some tradition. Furthermore, we need to know if there are other Scriptural books which clarify some of the things taught in the New Testament.

For example, there is a particular passage in the Book of Romans which many Protestants have used to build a theology about predestination and God's sovereignty as opposed to man's free will.

I am not here to talk about this theology or the debates surrounding it. But I will say that those Christians have no idea that Paul was quoting *Wisdom of Solomon* when he wrote that passage in Romans. Perhaps if they had known the book which Paul quoted, then they would have understood the truth which Paul taught.

There are numerous examples like this found throughout the New Testament. Christians are like the Sadducees. They teach things as fact simply because they do not know the Scriptures.

If we read the books which the apostles referenced, then we would be more likely to understand the point the apostles were trying to teach. But if we continue to ignore those other books, then we will fail to understand the lessons and truths taught throughout the New Testament because we don't know the full context.

The only reason we do not read these other books is because of human traditions. As Jesus said to the Pharisees, "You rejected the word of God for the sake of your own tradition."<sup>2</sup> This is precisely what we have done in Christianity. We have rejected the Book of

---

<sup>1</sup> Acts 17:10-12

<sup>2</sup> Matthew 15:6

Enoch and many other books for no reason other than our own traditions. It is time for this to change.

Enoch said that when we read his words and recognize them for what they are, then we will begin to read other books as well. His words were prophecy. His words were Scripture. So, don't turn your back on these other books any longer. Open them. Read them. Learn from them.

Allow the Holy Spirit to be your Teacher – to give you wisdom, discernment, and understanding. Part of the very fabric of the New Covenant is that God will teach us directly so that we no longer have any need to be taught by any man.

Trust your Teacher. Jesus promised that the Holy Spirit would lead us into *all* truth. Not *some* truth, but *all* truth.<sup>1</sup> Trust that he did not lie when he made this promise.

Be a Berean. Go investigate these things for yourself.

---

<sup>1</sup> John 16:13





## ABOUT THE AUTHOR

Hey, we're Josh and Tess, the husband and wife team behind Acts Initiative. Unfortunately, most of what we call "Christianity" today... isn't.

The early Christians didn't live how Christians live today. They didn't care about money, they hated the world, they shared generously with everyone, they didn't look out for their own interests, and they invested in eternity instead of in education, possessions, and other temporary things. But today, we can't even imagine a life like that... and that's a problem.

We want to see REAL Christianity spreading across the world again - the kind we read about in the New Testament. So, we started the Acts Initiative website and YouTube channel as a way to publish free books and videos where we expose many lies that Christians have become accustomed to and accepted because of our culture, churches, and the various doctrines we've been taught. We want to help people recognize the problem and start BECOMING the solution by changing the way we think and the way we live as Christians.

Our personal story is that we both grew up in Church and thought we loved Jesus, but we didn't do what he said. (See John 14:23). We thought we were doing okay because all the "Christians" around us lived like us. But eventually, we started realizing that our priorities weren't the same priorities we saw all over the Bible. We were trying to fit the Bible into our normal lives instead of changing our lives to look like how Jesus said he wants his followers to live.

And what Jesus wants is radical. So, either Jesus didn't really mean what he said, or we needed to change.

We knew it was insane that we were too busy working and paying bills to do things for the Lord. We needed to free up our time and resources. So, we got rid of a bunch of stuff we didn't need, stopped eating out, canceled our entertainment subscriptions, etc... until we had simplified as much as we could imagine at the time. (This is an ongoing process, and we're realizing new ways we can simplify all the time!) We use our time to write books, make videos, write music, and look for opportunities to help people in need.

Be blessed as you do the things Jesus actually cares about!

















